



EPA/635/R-13/139a  
Revised External Review Draft  
[www.epa.gov/iris](http://www.epa.gov/iris)

## **Toxicological Review of Ammonia**

(CASRN 7664-41-7)

### **In Support of Summary Information on the Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS)**

*August 2013*

#### **NOTICE**

This document is a **Revised External Review draft**. This information is distributed solely for the purpose of pre-dissemination peer review under applicable information quality guidelines. It has not been formally disseminated by EPA. It does not represent and should not be construed to represent any Agency determination or policy. It is being circulated for review of its technical accuracy and science policy implications.

National Center for Environmental Assessment  
Office of Research and Development  
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Washington, DC

**DISCLAIMER**

This document is a preliminary draft for review purposes only. This information is distributed solely for the purpose of pre-dissemination peer review under applicable information quality guidelines. It has not been formally disseminated by EPA. It does not represent and should not be construed to represent any Agency determination or policy. Mention of trade names or commercial products does not constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.

# CONTENTS

AUTHORS   CONTRIBUTORS   REVIEWERS.....	vi
PREFACE .....	viii
PREAMBLE TO IRIS TOXICOLOGICAL REVIEWS.....	xii
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....	xxx
LITERATURE SEARCH STRATEGY   STUDY SELECTION AND EVALUATION .....	xxxvi
1. HAZARD IDENTIFICATION.....	1-1
1.1. SYNTHESIS OF EVIDENCE.....	1-1
1.1.1. Respiratory Effects .....	1-1
1.1.2. Gastrointestinal Effects.....	1-16
1.1.3. Immune System Effects .....	1-21
1.1.4. Other Systemic Effects.....	1-25
1.1.5. Carcinogenicity.....	1-33
1.2. SUMMARY AND EVALUATION.....	1-36
1.2.1. Weight of Evidence for Effects Other than Cancer .....	1-36
1.2.2. Weight of Evidence for Carcinogenicity.....	1-37
1.2.3. Susceptible Populations and Lifestages.....	1-37
2. DOSE-RESPONSE ANALYSIS .....	2-1
2.1. ORAL REFERENCE DOSE FOR EFFECTS OTHER THAN CANCER .....	2-1
2.2. INHALATION REFERENCE CONCENTRATION FOR EFFECTS OTHER THAN CANCER.....	2-2
2.2.1. Identification of Studies and Effects for Dose-Response Analysis.....	2-2
2.2.2. Methods of Analysis.....	2-4
2.2.3. Derivation of the Reference Concentration.....	2-5
2.2.4. Uncertainties in the Derivation of the Reference Concentration.....	2-6
2.2.5. Confidence Statement .....	2-8
2.2.6. Previous IRIS Assessment.....	2-9
2.3. Cancer Risk Estimates .....	2-9
REFERENCES.....	R-1

## **TABLES**

Table ES-1. Summary of reference concentration (RfC) derivation .....	xxxii
Table LS-1. Details of the literature search strategy employed for ammonia .....	xxxvii
Table 1-1. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effects in humans following inhalation exposure in industrial settings.....	1-6
Table 1-2. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effect in humans following inhalation exposure in cleaning settings .....	1-9
Table 1-3. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effects in animals .....	1-12
Table 1-4. Evidence pertaining to gastrointestinal effects in animals.....	1-18
Table 1-5. Evidence pertaining to immune system effects in animals .....	1-23
Table 1-6. Evidence pertaining to other systemic effects in humans.....	1-27
Table 1-7. Evidence pertaining to other systemic effects in animals .....	1-28
Table 1-8. Evidence pertaining to cancer in animals .....	1-35

## **FIGURES**

Figure LS-1. Study selection strategy. ....	xxxviii
Figure 1-1. Exposure-response array of respiratory effects following inhalation exposure to ammonia.....	1-14
Figure 1-2. Exposure-response array of gastrointestinal effects following oral exposure to ammonia.....	1-19
Figure 1-3. Exposure-response array of immune system effects following inhalation exposure to ammonia.....	1-24
Figure 1-4. Exposure-response array of systemic effects following inhalation exposure to ammonia.....	1-32

## ABBREVIATIONS

ALT	alanine aminotransferase	MRM	murine respiratory mycoplasmosis
AST	aspartate aminotransferase	NCEA	National Center for Environmental Assessment
ATSDR	Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry	NH <sub>3</sub>	ammonia
BCG	bacillus Calmette-Guérin	NH <sub>4</sub> <sup>+</sup>	ammonium ion
BMCL	95% lower bound on the benchmark concentration	NIOSH	National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
BMDL	95% lower bound on the benchmark dose	NOAEL	no-observed-adverse-effect level
CAC	cumulative ammonia concentration	NRC	National Research Council
CCRIS	Chemical Carcinogenesis Research Information System	ORD	EPA's Office of Research and Development
CERCLA	Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act	PEFR	peak expiratory flow rate
CFU	colony forming unit	pO <sub>2</sub>	oxygen partial pressure
CI	confidence interval	POD	point of departure
DAP	diammonium phosphate	PPD	purified protein derivative
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency	RfC	reference concentration
FEV <sub>1</sub>	forced expiratory volume in 1 second	RfD	reference dose
FVC	forced vital capacity	RTECS	Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances
HERO	Health and Environmental Research Online	TSCATS	Toxic Substance Control Act Test Submission Database
HSDB	Hazardous Substances Data Bank	UF	uncertainty factor
IgE	immunoglobulin E	UF <sub>A</sub>	interspecies uncertainty factor
IgG	immunoglobulin G	UF <sub>H</sub>	intraspecies uncertainty factor
IRIS	Integrated Risk Information System	UF <sub>L</sub>	LOAEL to NOAEL uncertainty factor
LD <sub>50</sub>	50% lethal dose	UF <sub>S</sub>	subchronic-to-chronic uncertainty factor
LOAEL	lowest-observed-adverse-effect level	UF <sub>D</sub>	database deficiencies uncertainty factor
MAO	monoamine oxidase	VEh	human occupational default minute volume
MNNG	N-methyl-N'-nitro-N-nitrosoguanidine	VEho	human ambient default minute volume

**AUTHORS | CONTRIBUTORS | REVIEWERS**

**Assessment Team**

Audrey Galizia, Dr. PH (Chemical Manager)

U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA  
Edison, NJ

James Ball, Ph.D.  
Glinda Cooper, Ph.D.  
Louis D’Amico, Ph.D.  
Keith Salazar, Ph.D.  
Christopher Sheth, Ph.D.

U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA  
Washington, DC

Christopher Brinkerhoff, Ph.D.

ORISE Postdoctoral Fellow at the U.S. EPA  
Washington, DC

**Scientific Support Team**

Vincent Cogliano, Ph.D.  
Samantha Jones, Ph.D.  
Jamie Strong, Ph.D.  
Ted Berner, MS  
Jason Fritz, Ph.D.  
Martin Gehlhaus, MPH

U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA  
Washington, DC

John Stanek, Ph.D.

U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA  
Research Triangle Park, NC

**Production Team**

Maureen Johnson  
Vicki Soto

U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA  
Washington, DC

Ellen F. Lorang, MA

U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA  
Research Triangle Park, NC

**Contractor Support**

Amber Bacom, MS  
Fernando Llados, Ph.D.  
Julie Stickney, Ph.D.

SRC, Inc., Syracuse, NY

**Executive Direction**

Kenneth Olden, Ph.D., Sc.D., L.H.D. (Center Director)  
John Vandenberg, Ph.D. (National Program Director, HHRA)  
Lynn Flowers, Ph.D., DABT (Associate Director for Health)  
Vincent Cogliano, Ph.D. (IRIS Program Director-acting)  
Samantha Jones, Ph.D. (IRIS Associate Director for Science)  
Susan Rieth, MPH (Branch Chief)

U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA  
Washington, DC

1

---

**Internal Review Team**

Marian Rutigliano, MD  
John Whalan  
U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA  
Washington, DC

Amanda S. Persad, Ph.D.  
Paul Reinhart, Ph.D.  
U.S. EPA/ORD/NCEA  
Research Triangle Park, NC

2

---

**Reviewers**

4

5 This assessment was provided for review to scientists in EPA's program and regional Offices.  
6 Comments were submitted by:

7

8 Office of Policy, Washington, DC  
9 Office of Water, Washington, DC  
10 Office of Children's Health Protection, Washington, DC  
11 Office of Transportation and Air Quality in the Office of Air and Radiation, Ann Arbor, Michigan  
12 Office of Air Quality and Planning Standards in the Office of Air and Radiation, Washington, DC  
13 Region 2, New York, New York

14

15 This assessment was provided for review to other federal agencies and the Executive Office of the  
16 President. Comments were submitted by:

17

Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry, Centers for Disease Control and  
Prevention, Department of Health & Human Services  
Council on Environmental Quality, Executive Office of the President  
Food Safety and Inspection Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture

18

19 This assessment was released for public comment on June 8, 2012 and comments were due on  
20 August 7, 2012. A summary and EPA's disposition of the comments received from the public is  
21 included in Appendix G of the Supplemental Information to the Toxicological Review. Comments  
were received from the following entities:

22

The American Chemistry Council Washington, DC  
The Fertilizer Institute Washington, DC

1  
2  
3 **PREFACE**  
4

5  
6 This Toxicological Review critically reviews the publicly available studies on ammonia in  
7 order to identify its adverse health effects and to characterize exposure-response relationships.  
8 The assessment covers gaseous ammonia (NH<sub>3</sub>) and ammonia dissolved in water (ammonium  
9 hydroxide, NH<sub>4</sub>OH). It was prepared under the auspices of the Environmental Protection Agency's  
10 (EPA's) Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS) program.

11 Ammonia and ammonium hydroxide are listed as hazardous substances under the  
12 Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act of 1980 (CERCLA) and  
13 ammonia is found at about 8% of hazardous waste sites on the National Priorities List ([ATSDR,  
14 2004](#)). Ammonia is subject to reporting requirements for the Toxics Release Inventory under the  
15 Emergency Planning and Community Right-to-Know Act of 1986 and to emergency planning  
16 requirements under section 112(r) of the Clean Air Act.

17 This assessment updates a previous IRIS assessment of ammonia that was developed in  
18 1991. The previous assessment included only an inhalation reference concentration (RfC) for  
19 effects other than cancer. New information has become available, and this assessment reviews  
20 information on all health effects by all exposure routes.

21 This assessment was conducted in accordance with EPA guidance, which is cited and  
22 summarized in the Preamble to IRIS Toxicological Reviews. The findings of this assessment and  
23 related documents produced during its development are available on the IRIS website  
24 (<http://www.epa.gov/iris/>). Appendices for chemical and physical properties, the toxicity of  
25 ammonium salts, toxicokinetic information, and summaries of toxicity studies and other  
26 information are provided as Supplemental Information to this assessment (see Appendices A to E).

27 Portions of this Toxicological Review were adapted from the Toxicological Profile for  
28 Ammonia developed by the Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry ([ATSDR, 2004](#)) under  
29 a Memorandum of Understanding that encourages interagency collaboration, sharing of scientific  
30 information, and more efficient use of resources.

31  
32 **Implementation of the 2011 National Research Council Recommendations**

33 On December 23, 2011, The Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2012, was signed into law  
34 ([U.S. Congress, 2011](#)). The report language included direction to EPA for the IRIS Program related  
35 to recommendations provided by the National Research Council (NRC) in their review of EPA's  
36 draft IRIS assessment of formaldehyde ([NRC, 2011](#)). The report language included the following:  
37

1 The Agency shall incorporate, as appropriate, based on chemical-specific data sets  
2 and biological effects, the recommendations of Chapter 7 of the National Research  
3 Council's Review of the Environmental Protection Agency's Draft IRIS Assessment of  
4 Formaldehyde into the IRIS process...For draft assessments released in fiscal year  
5 2012, the Agency shall include documentation describing how the Chapter 7  
6 recommendations of the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) have been  
7 implemented or addressed, including an explanation for why certain  
8 recommendations were not incorporated.  
9

10 The NRC's recommendations, provided in Chapter 7 of the review report, offered  
11 suggestions to EPA for improving the development of IRIS assessments. Consistent with the  
12 direction provided by Congress, documentation of how the recommendations from Chapter 7 of the  
13 NRC report have been implemented in this assessment is provided in Appendix F. Where  
14 necessary, the documentation includes an explanation for why certain recommendations were not  
15 incorporated.

16 The IRIS Program's implementation of the NRC recommendations is following a phased  
17 approach that is consistent with the NRC's "Roadmap for Revision" as described in Chapter 7 of the  
18 formaldehyde review report. The NRC stated that, "the committee recognizes that the changes  
19 suggested would involve a multi-year process and extensive effort by the staff at the National  
20 Center for Environmental Assessment and input and review by the EPA Science Advisory Board and  
21 others."

22 Phase 1 of implementation has focused on a subset of the short-term recommendations,  
23 such as editing and streamlining documents, increasing transparency and clarity, and using more  
24 tables, figures, and appendices to present information and data in assessments. Phase 1 also  
25 focused on assessments near the end of the development process and close to final posting. The  
26 IRIS assessment for ammonia is the first assessment in Phase 2 of implementation, which addresses  
27 all of the short-term NRC recommendations (see Appendix F, Table F-1). The IRIS Program is  
28 implementing all of these recommendations but recognizes that achieving full and robust  
29 implementation of certain recommendations will be an evolving process with input and feedback  
30 from the public, stakeholders, and external peer review committees. Chemical assessments in  
31 Phase 3 of implementation will incorporate the longer-term recommendations made by the NRC  
32 (see Appendix F, Table F-2), including the development of a standardized approach to describe the  
33 strength of the evidence for noncancer effects. On May 16, 2012, EPA announced ([U.S. EPA, 2012c](#))  
34 that as a part of a review of the IRIS Program's assessment development process, the NRC will also  
35 review current methods for weight-of-evidence analyses and recommend approaches for weighing  
36 scientific evidence for chemical hazard identification. This effort is included in Phase 3 of EPA's  
37 implementation plan.  
38

1 **Assessments by Other National and International Health Agencies**

2 Toxicity information on ammonia has been evaluated by ATSDR, the National Research  
3 Council (NRC), the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists, the National  
4 Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, and the Food and Drug Administration. The results of  
5 these assessments are presented in Appendix A of the Supplemental Information. It is important to  
6 recognize that these assessments may have been prepared for different purposes and may utilize  
7 different methods, and that newer studies may be included in the IRIS assessment.  
8

9 **Chemical Properties and Uses**

10 Ammonia is a corrosive gas with a pungent odor. It is highly soluble in water (up to  
11 482 g/L) and is a weak base ([Lide, 2008](#); [O'Neil et al., 2006](#); [Eggeman, 2001](#); [Dean, 1985](#)).  
12 Additional information on the chemical and physical properties of ammonia is presented in  
13 Appendix B.

14 About 80% of commercially produced ammonia is used in agricultural fertilizers. Ammonia  
15 is also used as a corrosion inhibitor, in water purification, as a household cleaner, as an  
16 antimicrobial agent in food products, as a refrigerant, as a stabilizer in the rubber industry, in the  
17 pulp and paper and metallurgy industries, as a source of hydrogen in the hydrogenation of fats and  
18 oils, and as a chemical intermediate in the production of pharmaceuticals, explosives, and other  
19 chemicals. Ammonia is also used to reduce nitrogen oxide emissions from combustion sources such  
20 as industrial and municipal boilers, power generators, and diesel engines ([HSDB, 2012](#); [Johnson et  
21 al., 2009](#); [Eggeman, 2001](#)).

22 Ammonia is a component of the global nitrogen cycle and is essential to many biological  
23 processes. Nitrogen-fixing bacteria convert atmospheric nitrogen to ammonia that is available for  
24 uptake into plants. Organic nitrogen released from biota can be converted to ammonia. Ammonia  
25 in water and soil can be converted to nitrite and nitrate through the process of nitrification.  
26 Ammonia is also endogenously produced in humans and other mammals, where it is an essential  
27 metabolite used in nucleic acid and protein synthesis, is necessary for maintaining acid-base  
28 balance, and is an integral part of nitrogen homeostasis ([Nelson and Cox, 2008](#); [Socolow, 1999](#);  
29 [Rosswall, 1981](#)). This assessment compares endogenous levels of ammonia in humans to the  
30 toxicity values that it derives.  
31

32 **Consideration of Ammonium Salts for Inclusion in This Assessment**

33 EPA considered whether to include ammonium salts (e.g., ammonium acetate, chloride, and  
34 sulfate) in this assessment. These salts readily dissolve in water through dissociation into an  
35 ammonium cation (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>) and an anion. Oral toxicity studies on ammonium chloride and  
36 ammonium sulfate suggest that these salts may differ in toxicity (see Appendix C for a summary of  
37 subchronic/chronic toxicity information for selected ammonium salts), but it is not clear whether  
38 this reflects differences between the salts or in the effects that were studied. If the toxicity of the

1 salts is affected by the anion, then it would not be correct to attribute toxic effects to the ammonium  
2 cation. ATSDR considered this question and concluded, “. . . that it would be inappropriate to  
3 extrapolate findings obtained with ammonium chloride (or any ammonium salt) to equivalent  
4 amounts of ammonium, but derived from a different salt” ([ATSDR, 2004](#)). Similarly, the World  
5 Health Organization considered ammonium chloride-induced kidney hypertrophy and observed  
6 that the extent to which it results from ammonium chloride-induced acidosis or from a direct effect  
7 of the ammonium ion is not clear ([IPCS, 1986](#)). Thus, in light of the uncertain influence of the anion  
8 on toxicity, ammonium salts were not used in the identification of effects or in the derivation of  
9 reference values for ammonia and ammonium hydroxide.

10  
11 For additional information about this assessment or for general questions regarding IRIS,  
12 please contact EPA’s IRIS Hotline at 202-566-1676 (phone), 202-566-1749 (fax), or  
13 [hotline.iris@epa.gov](mailto:hotline.iris@epa.gov).

# PREAMBLE TO IRIS TOXICOLOGICAL REVIEWS

## 1. Scope of the IRIS Program

Soon after the EPA was established in 1970, it was at the forefront of developing risk assessment as a science and applying it in decisions to protect human health and the environment. The Clean Air Act, for example, mandates that the EPA provide “an ample margin of safety to protect public health”; the Safe Drinking Water Act, that “no adverse effects on the health of persons may reasonably be anticipated to occur, allowing an adequate margin of safety.” Accordingly, the EPA uses information on the adverse effects of chemicals and on exposure levels below which these effects are not anticipated to occur.

IRIS assessments critically review the publicly available studies to identify adverse health effects from exposure to chemicals and to characterize exposure-response relationships. In terms set forth by the National Research Council (NRC, 1983), IRIS assessments cover the hazard identification and dose-response assessment steps of risk assessment, not the exposure assessment or risk characterization steps that are conducted by the EPA’s program and regional offices and by other federal, state, and local health agencies that evaluate risk in specific populations and exposure scenarios. IRIS assessments are distinct from and do not address political, economic, and technical considerations that influence the design and selection of risk management alternatives.

An IRIS assessment may cover a single chemical, a group of structurally or toxicologically related chemicals, or a complex mixture. These agents may be found in air, water, soil, or sediment. Exceptions are chemicals currently used exclusively as

pesticides, ionizing and non-ionizing radiation, and criteria air pollutants listed under section 108 of the Clean Air Act (carbon monoxide, lead, nitrogen oxides, ozone, particulate matter, and sulfur oxides).

Periodically, the IRIS Program asks other EPA programs and regions, other federal agencies, state health agencies, and the general public to nominate chemicals and mixtures for future assessment or reassessment. Agents may be considered for reassessment as significant new studies are published. Selection is based on program and regional office priorities and on availability of adequate information to evaluate the potential for adverse effects. Other agents may also be assessed in response to an urgent public health need.

## 2. Process for developing and peer-reviewing IRIS assessments

The process for developing IRIS assessments (revised in May 2009 and enhanced in July 2013) involves critical analysis of the pertinent studies, opportunities for public input, and multiple levels of scientific review. The EPA revises draft assessments after each review, and external drafts and comments become part of the public record (U.S. EPA, 2009).

Before beginning an assessment, the IRIS Program discusses the scope with other EPA programs and regions to ensure that the assessment will meet their needs. Then a public meeting on problem formulation invites discussion of the key issues and the studies and analytical approaches that might contribute to their resolution.

**Step 1. Development of a draft Toxicological Review.** The draft assessment considers all pertinent publicly available studies and applies

1 consistent criteria to evaluate study  
2 quality, identify health effects, identify  
3 mechanistic events and pathways,  
4 integrate the evidence of causation for  
5 each effect, and derive toxicity values. A  
6 public meeting prior to the integration of  
7 evidence and derivation of toxicity  
8 values promotes public discussion of the  
9 literature search, evidence, and key  
10 issues.

11 **Step 2. Internal review by scientists in**  
12 **EPA programs and regions.** The draft  
13 assessment is revised to address the  
14 comments from within the EPA.

15 **Step 3. Interagency science consultation**  
16 **with other federal agencies and the**  
17 **Executive Offices of the President.**  
18 The draft assessment is revised to  
19 address the interagency comments. The  
20 science consultation draft, interagency  
21 comments, and the EPA's response to  
22 major comments become part of the  
23 public record.

24 **Step 4. Public review and comment,**  
25 **followed by external peer review.** The  
26 EPA releases the draft assessment for  
27 public review and comment. A public  
28 meeting provides an opportunity to  
29 discuss the assessment prior to peer  
30 review. Then the EPA releases a draft for  
31 external peer review. The peer review  
32 meeting is open to the public and  
33 includes time for oral public comments.  
34 The peer reviewers assess whether the  
35 evidence has been assembled and  
36 evaluated according to guidelines and  
37 whether the conclusions are justified by  
38 the evidence. The peer review draft,  
39 written public comments, and peer  
40 review report become part of the public  
41 record.

42 **Step 5. Revision of draft Toxicological**  
43 **Review and development of draft IRIS**  
44 **summary.** The draft assessment is  
45 revised to reflect the peer review  
46 comments, public comments, and newly  
47 published studies that are critical to the  
48 conclusions of the assessment. The

49 disposition of peer review comments  
50 and public comments becomes part of  
51 the public record.

52 **Step 6. Final EPA review and interagency**  
53 **science discussion with other federal**  
54 **agencies and the Executive Offices of**  
55 **the President** The draft assessment and  
56 summary are revised to address the EPA  
57 and interagency comments. The science  
58 discussion draft, written interagency  
59 comments, and EPA's response to major  
60 comments become part of the public  
61 record.

62 **Step 7. Completion and posting.** The  
63 Toxicological Review and IRIS summary  
64 are posted on the IRIS website ([http://](http://www.epa.gov/iris)  
65 [www.epa.gov/iris](http://www.epa.gov/iris)).

66 The remainder of this Preamble  
67 addresses step 1, the development of a draft  
68 Toxicological Review. IRIS assessments  
69 follow standard practices of evidence  
70 evaluation and peer review, many of which  
71 are discussed in EPA guidelines ([U.S. EPA,](#)  
72 [2005a, b, 2000, 1998, 1996, 1991, 1986a, b](#))  
73 and other methods ([U.S. EPA, 2012a, b, 2011,](#)  
74 [2006a, b, 2002, 1994b](#)). Transparent  
75 application of scientific judgment is of  
76 paramount importance. To provide a  
77 harmonized approach across IRIS  
78 assessments, this Preamble summarizes  
79 concepts from these guidelines and  
80 emphasizes principles of general  
81 applicability.

---

### 82 **3. Identifying and selecting** 83 **pertinent studies**

#### 84 **3.1. Identifying studies**

85 Before beginning an assessment, the EPA  
86 conducts a comprehensive search of the  
87 primary scientific literature. The literature  
88 search follows standard practices and  
89 includes the PubMed and ToxNet databases  
90 of the National Library of Medicine, Web of  
91 Science, and other databases listed in the  
92 EPA's HERO system (Health and  
93 Environmental Research Online, [\*This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.\*](http://</a></p></div><div data-bbox=)

1 [hero.epa.gov/](http://hero.epa.gov/)). Searches for information on  
2 mechanisms of toxicity are inherently  
3 specialized and may include studies on other  
4 agents that act through related mechanisms.

5 Each assessment specifies the search  
6 strategies, keywords, and cut-off dates of its  
7 literature searches. The EPA posts the  
8 results of the literature search on the IRIS  
9 web site and requests information from the  
10 public on additional studies and ongoing  
11 research.

12 The EPA also considers studies received  
13 through the IRIS Submission Desk and  
14 studies (typically unpublished) submitted  
15 under the Toxic Substances Control Act or  
16 the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and  
17 Rodenticide Act. Material submitted as  
18 Confidential Business Information is  
19 considered only if it includes health and  
20 safety data that can be publicly released. If a  
21 study that may be critical to the conclusions  
22 of the assessment has not been peer-  
23 reviewed, the EPA will have it peer-  
24 reviewed.

25 The EPA also examines the toxicokinetics  
26 of the agent to identify other chemicals (for  
27 example, major metabolites of the agent) to  
28 include in the assessment if adequate  
29 information is available, in order to more  
30 fully explain the toxicity of the agent and to  
31 suggest dose metrics for subsequent  
32 modeling.

33 In assessments of chemical mixtures,  
34 mixture studies are preferred for their  
35 ability to reflect interactions among  
36 components. The literature search seeks, in  
37 decreasing order of preference ([U.S. EPA,  
38 2000, §2.1, 1986b, §2.2](#)):

- 39 – Studies of the mixture being assessed.
- 40 – Studies of a sufficiently similar mixture.  
41 In evaluating similarity, the assessment  
42 considers the alteration of mixtures in  
43 the environment through partitioning  
44 and transformation.
- 45 – Studies of individual chemical  
46 components of the mixture, if there are  
47 not adequate studies of sufficiently  
48 similar mixtures.

## 49 **3.2. Selecting pertinent epidemiologic** 50 **studies**

51 Study design is the key consideration for  
52 selecting pertinent epidemiologic studies  
53 from the results of the literature search.

- 54 – Cohort studies, case-control studies, and  
55 some population-based surveys (for  
56 example, NHANES) provide the strongest  
57 epidemiologic evidence, especially if they  
58 collect information about individual  
59 exposures and effects.
- 60 – Ecological studies (geographic  
61 correlation studies) relate exposures and  
62 effects by geographic area. They can  
63 provide strong evidence if there are  
64 large exposure contrasts between  
65 geographic areas, relatively little  
66 exposure variation within study areas,  
67 and population migration is limited.
- 68 – Case reports of high or accidental  
69 exposure lack definition of the  
70 population at risk and the expected  
71 number of cases. They can provide  
72 information about a rare effect or about  
73 the relevance of analogous results in  
74 animals.

75 The assessment briefly reviews  
76 ecological studies and case reports but  
77 reports details only if they suggest effects  
78 not identified by other studies.

## 79 **3.3. Selecting pertinent experimental** 80 **studies**

81 Exposure route is a key design  
82 consideration for selecting pertinent  
83 experimental animal studies or human  
84 clinical studies.

- 85 – Studies of oral, inhalation, or dermal  
86 exposure involve passage through an  
87 absorption barrier and are considered  
88 most pertinent to human environmental  
89 exposure.
- 90 – Injection or implantation studies are  
91 often considered less pertinent but may  
92 provide valuable toxicokinetic or  
93 mechanistic information. They also may

1 be useful for identifying effects in  
2 animals if deposition or absorption is  
3 problematic (for example, for particles  
4 and fibers).

5 Exposure duration is also a key design  
6 consideration for selecting pertinent  
7 experimental animal studies.

8 – Studies of effects from chronic exposure  
9 are most pertinent to lifetime human  
10 exposure.

11 – Studies of effects from less-than-chronic  
12 exposure are pertinent but less  
13 preferred for identifying effects from  
14 lifetime human exposure. Such studies  
15 may be indicative of effects from less-  
16 than-lifetime human exposure.

17 Short-duration studies involving animals  
18 or humans may provide toxicokinetic or  
19 mechanistic information.

20 For developmental toxicity and  
21 reproductive toxicity, irreversible effects  
22 may result from a brief exposure during a  
23 critical period of development. Accordingly,  
24 specialized study designs are used for these  
25 effects ([U.S. EPA, 2006b](#), [1998](#), [1996](#), [1991](#)).

---

26 **4. Evaluating the quality of**  
27 **individual studies**

28 After the subsets of pertinent  
29 epidemiologic and experimental studies  
30 have been selected from the literature  
31 searches, the assessment evaluates the  
32 quality of each individual study. This  
33 evaluation considers the design, methods,  
34 conduct, and documentation of each study,  
35 but not whether the results are positive,  
36 negative, or null. The objective is to identify  
37 the stronger, more informative studies based  
38 on a uniform evaluation of quality  
39 characteristics across studies of similar  
40 design.

41 **4.1. Evaluating the quality of**  
42 **epidemiologic studies**

43 The assessment evaluates design and  
44 methodological aspects that can increase or

45 decrease the weight given to each  
46 epidemiologic study in the overall evaluation  
47 ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), [1998](#), [1996](#), [1994b](#), [1991](#)):

48 – Documentation of study design,  
49 methods, population characteristics, and  
50 results.

51 – Definition and selection of the study  
52 group and comparison group.

53 – Ascertainment of exposure to the  
54 chemical or mixture.

55 – Ascertainment of disease or health effect.

56 – Duration of exposure and follow-up and  
57 adequacy for assessing the occurrence of  
58 effects.

59 – Characterization of exposure during  
60 critical periods.

61 – Sample size and statistical power to  
62 detect anticipated effects.

63 – Participation rates and potential for  
64 selection bias as a result of the achieved  
65 participation rates.

66 – Measurement error (can lead to  
67 misclassification of exposure, health  
68 outcomes, and other factors) and other  
69 types of information bias.

70 – Potential confounding and other sources  
71 of bias addressed in the study design or  
72 in the analysis of results. The basis for  
73 consideration of confounding is a  
74 reasonable expectation that the  
75 confounder is related to both exposure  
76 and outcome and is sufficiently prevalent  
77 to result in bias.

78 For developmental toxicity, reproductive  
79 toxicity, neurotoxicity, and cancer there is  
80 further guidance on the nuances of  
81 evaluating epidemiologic studies of these  
82 effects ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), [1998](#), [1996](#), [1991](#)).

83 **4.2. Evaluating the quality of**  
84 **experimental studies**

85 The assessment evaluates design and  
86 methodological aspects that can increase or  
87 decrease the weight given to each

1 experimental animal study, in-vitro study, or  
2 human clinical study ([U.S. EPA, 2005a, 1998,](#)  
3 [1996, 1991](#)). Research involving human  
4 subjects is considered only if conducted  
5 according to ethical principles.

6 – Documentation of study design, animals  
7 or study population, methods, basic data,  
8 and results.

9 – Nature of the assay and validity for its  
10 intended purpose.

11 – Characterization of the nature and extent  
12 of impurities and contaminants of the  
13 administered chemical or mixture.

14 – Characterization of dose and dosing  
15 regimen (including age at exposure) and  
16 their adequacy to elicit adverse effects,  
17 including latent effects.

18 – Sample sizes and statistical power to  
19 detect dose-related differences or trends.

20 – Ascertainment of survival, vital signs,  
21 disease or effects, and cause of death.

22 – Control of other variables that could  
23 influence the occurrence of effects.

24 The assessment uses statistical tests to  
25 evaluate whether the observations may be  
26 due to chance. The standard for determining  
27 statistical significance of a response is a  
28 trend test or comparison of outcomes in the  
29 exposed groups against those of concurrent  
30 controls. In some situations, examination of  
31 historical control data from the same  
32 laboratory within a few years of the study  
33 may improve the analysis. For an uncommon  
34 effect that is not statistically significant  
35 compared with concurrent controls,  
36 historical controls may show that the effect  
37 is unlikely to be due to chance. For a  
38 response that appears significant against a  
39 concurrent control response that is unusual,  
40 historical controls may offer a different  
41 interpretation ([U.S. EPA, 2005a, §2.2.2.1.3](#)).

42 For developmental toxicity, reproductive  
43 toxicity, neurotoxicity, and cancer there is  
44 further guidance on the nuances of  
45 evaluating experimental studies of these  
46 effects ([U.S. EPA, 2005a, 1998, 1996, 1991](#)).

47 In multi-generation studies, agents that  
48 produce developmental effects at doses that  
49 are not toxic to the maternal animal are of  
50 special concern. Effects that occur at doses  
51 associated with mild maternal toxicity are  
52 not assumed to result only from maternal  
53 toxicity. Moreover, maternal effects may be  
54 reversible, while effects on the offspring may  
55 be permanent ([U.S. EPA, 1998, §3.1.1.4,](#)  
56 [1991, §3.1.2.4.5.4](#)).

### 57 **4.3. Reporting study results**

58 The assessment uses evidence tables to  
59 present the design and key results of  
60 pertinent studies. There may be separate  
61 tables for each site of toxicity or type of  
62 study.

63 If a large number of studies observe the  
64 same effect, the assessment considers the  
65 study quality characteristics in this section  
66 to identify the strongest studies or types of  
67 study. The tables present details from these  
68 studies, and the assessment explains the  
69 reasons for not reporting details of other  
70 studies or groups of studies that do not add  
71 new information. Supplemental information  
72 provides references to all studies  
73 considered, including those not summarized  
74 in the tables.

75 The assessment discusses strengths and  
76 limitations that affect the interpretation of  
77 each study. If the interpretation of a study in  
78 the assessment differs from that of the study  
79 authors, the assessment discusses the basis  
80 for the difference.

81 As a check on the selection and  
82 evaluation of pertinent studies, the EPA asks  
83 peer reviewers to identify studies that were  
84 not adequately considered.

---

## 85 **5. Evaluating the overall evidence** 86 **of each effect**

### 87 **5.1. Concepts of causal inference**

88 For each health effect, the assessment  
89 evaluates the evidence as a whole to  
90 determine whether it is reasonable to infer a  
91 causal association between exposure to the

1 agent and the occurrence of the effect. This  
2 inference is based on information from  
3 pertinent human studies, animal studies, and  
4 mechanistic studies of adequate quality.  
5 Positive, negative, and null results are given  
6 weight according to study quality.

7 Causal inference involves scientific  
8 judgment, and the considerations are  
9 nuanced and complex. Several health  
10 agencies have developed frameworks for  
11 causal inference, among them the U.S.  
12 Surgeon General ([CDC, 2004](#); [HEW, 1964](#)),  
13 the International Agency for Research on  
14 Cancer ([2006](#)), the Institute of Medicine  
15 ([2008](#)), and the EPA ([U.S. EPA, 2010](#), §1.6,  
16 [2005a](#), §2.5). Although developed for  
17 different purposes, the frameworks are  
18 similar in nature and provide an established  
19 structure and language for causal inference.  
20 Each considers aspects of an association that  
21 suggest causation, discussed by Hill ([1965](#))  
22 and elaborated by Rothman and Greenland  
23 ([1998](#)) ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §2.2.1.7, [1994b](#),  
24 app. C).

25 **Strength of association:** The finding of a  
26 large relative risk with narrow  
27 confidence intervals strongly suggests  
28 that an association is not due to chance,  
29 bias, or other factors. Modest relative  
30 risks, however, may reflect a small range  
31 of exposures, an agent of low potency, an  
32 increase in an effect that is common,  
33 exposure misclassification, or other  
34 sources of bias.

35 **Consistency of association:** An inference of  
36 causation is strengthened if elevated  
37 risks are observed in independent  
38 studies of different populations and  
39 exposure scenarios. Reproducibility of  
40 findings constitutes one of the strongest  
41 arguments for causation. Discordant  
42 results sometimes reflect differences in  
43 study design, exposure, or confounding  
44 factors.

45 **Specificity of association:** As originally  
46 intended, this refers to one cause  
47 associated with one effect. Current  
48 understanding that many agents cause

49 multiple effects and many effects have  
50 multiple causes make this a less  
51 informative aspect of causation, unless  
52 the effect is rare or unlikely to have  
53 multiple causes.

54 **Temporal relationship:** A causal  
55 interpretation requires that exposure  
56 precede development of the effect.

57 **Biologic gradient (exposure-response  
58 relationship):** Exposure-response  
59 relationships strongly suggest causation.  
60 A monotonic increase is not the only  
61 pattern consistent with causation. The  
62 presence of an exposure-response  
63 gradient also weighs against bias and  
64 confounding as the source of an  
65 association.

66 **Biologic plausibility:** An inference of  
67 causation is strengthened by data  
68 demonstrating plausible biologic  
69 mechanisms, if available. Plausibility  
70 may reflect subjective prior beliefs if  
71 there is insufficient understanding of the  
72 biologic process involved.

73 **Coherence:** An inference of causation is  
74 strengthened by supportive results from  
75 animal experiments, toxicokinetic  
76 studies, and short-term tests. Coherence  
77 may also be found in other lines of  
78 evidence, such as changing disease  
79 patterns in the population.

80 **“Natural experiments”:** A change in  
81 exposure that brings about a change in  
82 disease frequency provides strong  
83 evidence, as it tests the hypothesis of  
84 causation. An example would be an  
85 intervention to reduce exposure in the  
86 workplace or environment that is  
87 followed by a reduction of an adverse  
88 effect.

89 **Analogy:** Information on structural  
90 analogues or on chemicals that induce  
91 similar mechanistic events can provide  
92 insight into causation.

93 These considerations are consistent with  
94 guidelines for systematic reviews that

1 evaluate the quality and weight of evidence.  
 2 Confidence is increased if the magnitude of  
 3 effect is large, if there is evidence of an  
 4 exposure-response relationship, or if an  
 5 association was observed and the plausible  
 6 biases would tend to decrease the magnitude  
 7 of the reported effect. Confidence is  
 8 decreased for study limitations,  
 9 inconsistency of results, indirectness of  
 10 evidence, imprecision, or reporting bias  
 11 ([Guyatt et al., 2008a](#); [Guyatt et al., 2008b](#)).

## 12 **5.2. Evaluating evidence in humans**

13 For each effect, the assessment evaluates  
 14 the evidence from the epidemiologic studies  
 15 as a whole. The objective is to determine  
 16 whether a credible association has been  
 17 observed and, if so, whether that association  
 18 is consistent with causation. In doing this,  
 19 the assessment explores alternative  
 20 explanations (such as chance, bias, and  
 21 confounding) and draws a conclusion about  
 22 whether these alternatives can satisfactorily  
 23 explain any observed association.

24 To make clear how much the  
 25 epidemiologic evidence contributes to the  
 26 overall weight of the evidence, the  
 27 assessment may select a standard descriptor  
 28 to characterize the epidemiologic evidence  
 29 of association between exposure to the agent  
 30 and occurrence of a health effect.

### 31 ***Sufficient epidemiologic evidence of an 32 association consistent with causation:***

33 The evidence establishes a causal  
 34 association for which alternative  
 35 explanations such as chance, bias, and  
 36 confounding can be ruled out with  
 37 reasonable confidence.

### 38 ***Suggestive epidemiologic evidence of an 39 association consistent with causation:***

40 The evidence suggests a causal  
 41 association but chance, bias, or  
 42 confounding cannot be ruled out as  
 43 explaining the association.

### 44 ***Inadequate epidemiologic evidence to 45 infer a causal association:*** The available 46 studies do not permit a conclusion

47 regarding the presence or absence of an  
 48 association.

49 ***Epidemiologic evidence consistent with no  
 50 causal association:*** Several adequate  
 51 studies covering the full range of human  
 52 exposures and considering susceptible  
 53 populations, and for which alternative  
 54 explanations such as bias and  
 55 confounding can be ruled out, are  
 56 mutually consistent in not finding an  
 57 association.

## 58 **5.3. Evaluating evidence in animals**

59 For each effect, the assessment evaluates  
 60 the evidence from the animal experiments as  
 61 a whole to determine the extent to which  
 62 they indicate a potential for effects in  
 63 humans. Consistent results across various  
 64 species and strains increase confidence that  
 65 similar results would occur in humans.  
 66 Several concepts discussed by Hill ([1965](#))  
 67 are pertinent to the weight of experimental  
 68 results: consistency of response, dose-  
 69 response relationships, strength of response,  
 70 biologic plausibility, and coherence ([U.S.  
 71 EPA, 2005a](#), §2.2.1.7, [1994](#), app. C).

72 In weighing evidence from multiple  
 73 experiments, U.S. EPA ([2005a](#), §2.5)  
 74 distinguishes

75 ***Conflicting evidence*** (that is, mixed positive  
 76 and negative results in the same sex and  
 77 strain using a similar study protocol)  
 78 from

79 ***Differing results*** (that is, positive results  
 80 and negative results are in different  
 81 sexes or strains or use different study  
 82 protocols).

83 Negative or null results do not invalidate  
 84 positive results in a different experimental  
 85 system. The EPA regards all as valid  
 86 observations and looks to explain differing  
 87 results using mechanistic information (for  
 88 example, physiologic or metabolic  
 89 differences across test systems) or  
 90 methodological differences (for example,  
 91 relative sensitivity of the tests, differences in

1 dose levels, insufficient sample size, or  
2 timing of dosing or data collection).

3 It is well established that there are  
4 critical periods for some developmental and  
5 reproductive effects ([U.S. EPA, 2006b](#),  
6 [2005a, b, 1998, 1996, 1991](#)). Accordingly,  
7 the assessment determines whether critical  
8 periods have been adequately investigated.  
9 Similarly, the assessment determines  
10 whether the database is adequate to  
11 evaluate other critical sites and effects.

12 In evaluating evidence of genetic  
13 toxicity:

- 14 - Demonstration of gene mutations,  
15 chromosome aberrations, or aneuploidy  
16 in humans or experimental mammals  
17 (*in vivo*) provides the strongest evidence.
- 18 - This is followed by positive results in  
19 lower organisms or in cultured cells  
20 (*in vitro*) or for other genetic events.
- 21 - Negative results carry less weight, partly  
22 because they cannot exclude the  
23 possibility of effects in other tissues  
24 ([IARC, 2006](#)).

25 For germ-cell mutagenicity, The EPA has  
26 defined categories of evidence, ranging from  
27 positive results of human germ-cell  
28 mutagenicity to negative results for all  
29 effects of concern ([U.S. EPA, 1986a](#), §2.3).

#### 30 **5.4. Evaluating mechanistic data**

31 Mechanistic data can be useful in  
32 answering several questions.

- 33 - The biologic plausibility of a causal  
34 interpretation of human studies.
- 35 - The generalizability of animal studies to  
36 humans.
- 37 - The susceptibility of particular  
38 populations or lifestages.

39 The focus of the analysis is to describe, if  
40 possible, mechanistic pathways that lead to a  
41 health effect. These pathways encompass:

- 42 - *Toxicokinetic processes* of absorption,  
43 distribution, metabolism, and  
44 elimination that lead to the formation of

45 an active agent and its presence at the  
46 site of initial biologic interaction.

- 47 - *Toxicodynamic processes* that lead to a  
48 health effect at this or another site (also  
49 known as a *mode of action*).

50 For each effect, the assessment discusses  
51 the available information on its *modes of*  
52 *action* and associated *key events* (*key events*  
53 being empirically observable, necessary  
54 precursor steps or biologic markers of such  
55 steps; *mode of action* being a series of key  
56 events involving interaction with cells,  
57 operational and anatomic changes, and  
58 resulting in disease). Pertinent information  
59 may also come from studies of metabolites  
60 or of compounds that are structurally similar  
61 or that act through similar mechanisms.  
62 Information on mode of action is not  
63 required for a conclusion that the agent is  
64 causally related to an effect ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#),  
65 §2.5).

66 The assessment addresses several  
67 questions about each hypothesized mode of  
68 action ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §2.4.3.4).

#### 69 **1) Is the hypothesized mode of action** 70 **sufficiently supported in test animals?**

71 Strong support for a key event being  
72 necessary to a mode of action can come  
73 from experimental challenge to the  
74 hypothesized mode of action, in which  
75 studies that suppress a key event  
76 observe suppression of the effect.  
77 Support for a mode of action is  
78 meaningfully strengthened by consistent  
79 results in different experimental models,  
80 much more so than by replicate  
81 experiments in the same model. The  
82 assessment may consider various  
83 aspects of causation in addressing this  
84 question.

#### 85 **2) Is the hypothesized mode of action** 86 **relevant to humans?**

87 The assessment reviews the key events to identify critical  
88 similarities and differences between the  
89 test animals and humans. Site  
90 concordance is not assumed between  
91 animals and humans, though it may hold  
92 for certain effects or modes of action.

1 Information suggesting quantitative  
2 differences in doses where effects would  
3 occur in animals or humans is  
4 considered in the dose-response  
5 analysis. Current levels of human  
6 exposure are not used to rule out human  
7 relevance, as IRIS assessments may be  
8 used in evaluating new or unforeseen  
9 circumstances that may entail higher  
10 exposures.

11 3) **Which populations or lifestages can**  
12 **be particularly susceptible to the**  
13 **hypothesized mode of action?** The  
14 assessment reviews the key events to  
15 identify populations and lifestages that  
16 might be susceptible to their occurrence.  
17 Quantitative differences may result in  
18 separate toxicity values for susceptible  
19 populations or lifestages.

20 The assessment discusses the likelihood  
21 that an agent operates through multiple  
22 modes of action. An uneven level of support  
23 for different modes of action can reflect  
24 disproportionate resources spent  
25 investigating them ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#),  
26 §2.4.3.3). It should be noted that in clinical  
27 reviews, the credibility of a series of studies  
28 is reduced if evidence is limited to studies  
29 funded by one interested sector ([Guyatt et](#)  
30 [al., 2008b](#)).

31 For cancer, the assessment evaluates  
32 evidence of a mutagenic mode of action to  
33 guide extrapolation to lower doses and  
34 consideration of susceptible lifestages. Key  
35 data include the ability of the agent or a  
36 metabolite to react with or bind to DNA,  
37 positive results in multiple test systems, or  
38 similar properties and structure-activity  
39 relationships to mutagenic carcinogens ([U.S.](#)  
40 [EPA, 2005a](#), §2.3.5).

### 41 5.5. Characterizing the overall weight 42 of the evidence

43 After evaluating the human, animal, and  
44 mechanistic evidence pertinent to an effect,  
45 the assessment answers the question: Does  
46 the agent cause the adverse effect? ([NRC,](#)  
47 [2009, 1983](#)). In doing this, the assessment

48 develops a narrative that integrates the  
49 evidence pertinent to causation. To provide  
50 clarity and consistency, the narrative  
51 includes a standard hazard descriptor. For  
52 example, the following standard descriptors  
53 combine epidemiologic, experimental, and  
54 mechanistic evidence of carcinogenicity ([U.S.](#)  
55 [EPA, 2005a](#), §2.5).

56 ***Carcinogenic to humans:*** There is  
57 convincing epidemiologic evidence of a  
58 causal association (that is, there is  
59 reasonable confidence that the  
60 association cannot be fully explained by  
61 chance, bias, or confounding); or there is  
62 strong human evidence of cancer or its  
63 precursors, extensive animal evidence,  
64 identification of key precursor events in  
65 animals, and strong evidence that they  
66 are anticipated to occur in humans.

67 ***Likely to be carcinogenic to humans:*** The  
68 evidence demonstrates a potential  
69 hazard to humans but does not meet the  
70 criteria for *carcinogenic*. There may be a  
71 plausible association in humans,  
72 multiple positive results in animals, or a  
73 combination of human, animal, or other  
74 experimental evidence.

75 ***Suggestive evidence of carcinogenic***  
76 ***potential:*** The evidence raises concern  
77 for effects in humans but is not sufficient  
78 for a stronger conclusion. This  
79 descriptor covers a range of evidence,  
80 from a positive result in the only  
81 available study to a single positive result  
82 in an extensive database that includes  
83 negative results in other species.

84 ***Inadequate information to assess***  
85 ***carcinogenic potential:*** No other  
86 descriptors apply. *Conflicting evidence*  
87 can be classified as *inadequate*  
88 *information* if all positive results are  
89 opposed by negative studies of equal  
90 quality in the same sex and strain.  
91 *Differing results*, however, can be  
92 classified as *suggestive evidence* or as  
93 *likely to be carcinogenic*.

1 **Not likely to be carcinogenic to humans:**

2 There is robust evidence for concluding  
3 that there is no basis for concern. There  
4 may be no effects in both sexes of at least  
5 two appropriate animal species; positive  
6 animal results and strong, consistent  
7 evidence that each mode of action in  
8 animals does not operate in humans; or  
9 convincing evidence that effects are not  
10 likely by a particular exposure route or  
11 below a defined dose.

12 Multiple descriptors may be used if there  
13 is evidence that carcinogenic effects differ by  
14 dose range or exposure route ([U.S. EPA,  
15 2005a](#), §2.5).

16 Another example of standard descriptors  
17 comes from the EPA's Integrated Science  
18 Assessments, which evaluate causation for  
19 the effects of the criteria pollutants in  
20 ambient air ([U.S. EPA, 2010](#), §1.6).

21 **Causal relationship:** Sufficient evidence to  
22 conclude that there is a causal  
23 relationship. Observational studies  
24 cannot be explained by plausible  
25 alternatives, or they are supported by  
26 other lines of evidence, for example,  
27 animal studies or mechanistic  
28 information.

29 **Likely to be a causal relationship:**

30 Sufficient evidence that a causal  
31 relationship is likely, but important  
32 uncertainties remain. For example,  
33 observational studies show an  
34 association but co-exposures are difficult  
35 to address or other lines of evidence are  
36 limited or inconsistent; or multiple  
37 animal studies from different  
38 laboratories demonstrate effects and  
39 there are limited or no human data.

40 **Suggestive of a causal relationship:**

41 At least one high-quality epidemiologic  
42 study shows an association but other  
43 studies are inconsistent.

44 **Inadequate to infer a causal relationship:**

45 The studies do not permit a conclusion  
46 regarding the presence or absence of an  
47 association.

48 **Not likely to be a causal relationship:**

49 Several adequate studies, covering the  
50 full range of human exposure and  
51 considering susceptible populations, are  
52 mutually consistent in not showing an  
53 effect at any level of exposure.

54 The EPA is investigating and may on a  
55 trial basis use these or other standard  
56 descriptors to characterize the overall  
57 weight of the evidence for effects other than  
58 cancer.

---

59 **6. Selecting studies for derivation  
60 of toxicity values**

61 For each effect where there is credible  
62 evidence of an association with the agent,  
63 the assessment derives toxicity values if  
64 there are suitable epidemiologic or  
65 experimental data. The decision to derive  
66 toxicity values may be linked to the hazard  
67 descriptor.

68 Dose-response analysis requires  
69 quantitative measures of dose and response.  
70 Then, other factors being equal:

- 71 – Epidemiologic studies are preferred over  
72 animal studies, if quantitative measures  
73 of exposure are available and effects can  
74 be attributed to the agent.
- 75 – Among experimental animal models,  
76 those that respond most like humans are  
77 preferred, if the comparability of  
78 response can be determined.
- 79 – Studies by a route of human  
80 environmental exposure are preferred,  
81 although a validated toxicokinetic model  
82 can be used to extrapolate across  
83 exposure routes.
- 84 – Studies of longer exposure duration and  
85 follow-up are preferred, to minimize  
86 uncertainty about whether effects are  
87 representative of lifetime exposure.
- 88 – Studies with multiple exposure levels are  
89 preferred for their ability to provide  
90 information about the shape of the  
91 exposure-response curve.

1 - Studies with adequate power to detect  
2 effects at lower exposure levels are  
3 preferred, to minimize the extent of  
4 extrapolation to levels found in the  
5 environment.

6 Studies with non-monotonic exposure-  
7 response relationships are not necessarily  
8 excluded from the analysis. A diminished  
9 effect at higher exposure levels may be  
10 satisfactorily explained by factors such as  
11 competing toxicity, saturation of absorption  
12 or metabolism, exposure misclassification,  
13 or selection bias.

14 If a large number of studies are suitable  
15 for dose-response analysis, the assessment  
16 considers the study characteristics in this  
17 section to focus on the most informative  
18 data. The assessment explains the reasons  
19 for not analyzing other groups of studies. As  
20 a check on the selection of studies for dose-  
21 response analysis, the EPA asks peer  
22 reviewers to identify studies that were not  
23 adequately considered.

---

## 24 7. Deriving toxicity values

### 25 7.1. General framework for dose- 26 response analysis

27 The EPA uses a two-step approach that  
28 distinguishes analysis of the observed dose-  
29 response data from inferences about lower  
30 doses ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3).

31 Within the observed range, the preferred  
32 approach is to use modeling to incorporate a  
33 wide range of data into the analysis. The  
34 modeling yields a *point of departure* (an  
35 exposure level near the lower end of the  
36 observed range, without significant  
37 extrapolation to lower doses) (sections 7.2-  
38 7.3).

39 Extrapolation to lower doses considers  
40 what is known about the modes of action for  
41 each effect (Sections 7.4-7.5). If response  
42 estimates at lower doses are not required, an  
43 alternative is to derive *reference values*,  
44 which are calculated by applying factors to  
45 the point of departure in order to account

46 for sources of uncertainty and variability  
47 (section 7.6).

48 For a group of agents that induce an  
49 effect through a common mode of action, the  
50 dose-response analysis may derive a *relative*  
51 *potency factor* for each agent. A full dose-  
52 response analysis is conducted for one well-  
53 studied *index chemical* in the group, then the  
54 potencies of other members are expressed in  
55 relative terms based on relative toxic effects,  
56 relative absorption or metabolic rates,  
57 quantitative structure-activity relationships,  
58 or receptor binding characteristics ([U.S. EPA,](#)  
59 [2005a](#), §3.2.6, [2000](#), §4.4).

60 Increasingly, the EPA is basing toxicity  
61 values on combined analyses of multiple  
62 data sets or multiple responses. The EPA  
63 also considers multiple dose-response  
64 approaches if they can be supported by  
65 robust data.

### 66 7.2. Modeling dose to sites of biologic 67 effects

68 The preferred approach for analysis of  
69 dose is toxicokinetic modeling because of its  
70 ability to incorporate a wide range of data.  
71 The preferred dose metric would refer to the  
72 active agent at the site of its biologic effect or  
73 to a close, reliable surrogate measure. The  
74 active agent may be the administered  
75 chemical or a metabolite. Confidence in the  
76 use of a toxicokinetic model depends on the  
77 robustness of its validation process and on  
78 the results of sensitivity analyses ([U.S. EPA,](#)  
79 [2006a](#), [2005a](#), §3.1, [1994b](#), §4.3).

80 Because toxicokinetic modeling can  
81 require many parameters and more data  
82 than are typically available, the EPA has  
83 developed standard approaches that can be  
84 applied to typical data sets. These standard  
85 approaches also facilitate comparison across  
86 exposure patterns and species.

87 - Intermittent study exposures are  
88 standardized to a daily average over the  
89 duration of exposure. For chronic effects,  
90 daily exposures are averaged over the  
91 lifespan. Exposures during a critical  
92 period, however, are not averaged over a

1 longer duration([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3.1.1,  
2 [1991](#), §3.2).

3 – Doses are standardized to equivalent  
4 human terms to facilitate comparison of  
5 results from different species.

6 – Oral doses are scaled allometrically  
7 using mg/kg<sup>3/4</sup>-d as the equivalent  
8 dose metric across species.  
9 Allometric scaling pertains to  
10 equivalence across species, not  
11 across lifestages, and is not used to  
12 scale doses from adult humans or  
13 mature animals to infants or children  
14 ([U.S. EPA, 2011, 2005a](#), §3.1.3).

15 – Inhalation exposures are scaled  
16 using dosimetry models that apply  
17 species-specific physiologic and  
18 anatomic factors and consider  
19 whether the effect occurs at the site  
20 of first contact or after systemic  
21 circulation ([U.S. EPA, 2012a, 1994b](#),  
22 §3).

23 It can be informative to convert doses  
24 across exposure routes. If this is done, the  
25 assessment describes the underlying data,  
26 algorithms, and assumptions ([U.S. EPA,](#)  
27 [2005a](#), §3.1.4).

28 In the absence of study-specific data on,  
29 for example, intake rates or body weight, the  
30 EPA has developed recommended values for  
31 use in dose-response analysis ([U.S. EPA,](#)  
32 [1988](#)).

### 33 **7.3. Modeling response in the range** 34 **of observation**

35 Toxicodynamic (“biologically based”)   
36 modeling can incorporate data on biologic   
37 processes leading to an effect. Such models   
38 require sufficient data to ascertain a mode of   
39 action and to quantitatively support model   
40 parameters associated with its key events.   
41 Because different models may provide   
42 equivalent fits to the observed data but   
43 diverge substantially at lower doses, critical   
44 biologic parameters should be measured   
45 from laboratory studies, not by model fitting.   
46 Confidence in the use of a toxicodynamic   
47 model depends on the robustness of its

48 validation process and on the results of   
49 sensitivity analyses. Peer review of the   
50 scientific basis and performance of a model   
51 is essential ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3.2.2).

52 Because toxicodynamic modeling can   
53 require many parameters and more   
54 knowledge and data than are typically   
55 available, the EPA has developed a standard   
56 set of empirical (“curve-fitting”) models   
57 (<http://www.epa.gov/ncea/bmnds/>) that can   
58 be applied to typical data sets, including   
59 those that are nonlinear. The EPA has also   
60 developed guidance on modeling dose-   
61 response data, assessing model fit, selecting   
62 suitable models, and reporting modeling   
63 results ([U.S. EPA, 2012b](#)). Additional   
64 judgment or alternative analyses are used if   
65 the procedure fails to yield reliable results,   
66 for example, if the fit is poor, modeling may   
67 be restricted to the lower doses, especially if   
68 there is competing toxicity at higher doses   
69 ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3.2.3).

70 Modeling is used to derive a point of   
71 departure ([U.S. EPA, 2012b, 2005a](#), §3.2.4).   
72 (See section 7.6 for alternatives if a point of   
73 departure cannot be derived by modeling.)

74 – If linear extrapolation is used, selection   
75 of a response level corresponding to the   
76 point of departure is not highly   
77 influential, so standard values near the   
78 low end of the observable range are   
79 generally used (for example, 10% extra   
80 risk for cancer bioassay data, 1% for   
81 epidemiologic data, lower for rare   
82 cancers).

83 – For nonlinear approaches, both   
84 statistical and biologic considerations   
85 are taken into account.

86 – For dichotomous data, a response   
87 level of 10% extra risk is generally   
88 used for minimally adverse effects,   
89 5% or lower for more severe effects.

90 – For continuous data, a response level   
91 is ideally based on an established   
92 definition of biologic significance. In   
93 the absence of such definition, one   
94 control standard deviation from the   
95 control mean is often used for

1           minimally adverse effects, one-half  
2           standard deviation for more severe  
3           effects.

4           The point of departure is the 95% lower  
5 bound on the dose associated with the  
6 selected response level.

#### 7 **7.4. Extrapolating to lower doses and** 8 **response levels**

9           The purpose of extrapolating to lower  
10 doses is to estimate responses at exposures  
11 below the observed data. Low-dose  
12 extrapolation, typically used for cancer data,  
13 considers what is known about modes of  
14 action ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#), §3.3.1, §3.3.2).

15 1) If a biologically based model has been  
16 developed and validated for the agent,  
17 extrapolation may use the fitted model  
18 below the observed range if significant  
19 model uncertainty can be ruled out with  
20 reasonable confidence.

21 2) Linear extrapolation is used if the dose-  
22 response curve is expected to have a  
23 linear component below the point of  
24 departure. This includes:

- 25       – Agents or their metabolites that are  
26       DNA-reactive and have direct  
27       mutagenic activity.
- 28       – Agents or their metabolites for which  
29       human exposures or body burdens  
30       are near doses associated with key  
31       events leading to an effect.

32           Linear extrapolation is also used when  
33 data are insufficient to establish mode of  
34 action and when scientifically plausible.

35           The result of linear extrapolation is  
36 described by an oral slope factor or an  
37 inhalation unit risk, which is the slope of  
38 the dose-response curve at lower doses  
39 or concentrations, respectively.

40 3) Nonlinear models are used for  
41 extrapolation if there are sufficient data  
42 to ascertain the mode of action and to  
43 conclude that it is not linear at lower  
44 doses, and the agent does not  
45 demonstrate mutagenic or other activity

46           consistent with linearity at lower doses.  
47 Nonlinear approaches generally should  
48 not be used in cases where mode of  
49 action has not ascertained. If nonlinear  
50 extrapolation is appropriate but no  
51 model is developed, an alternative is to  
52 calculate reference values.

53 4) Both linear and nonlinear approaches  
54 may be used if there a multiple modes of  
55 action. For example, modeling to a low  
56 response level can be useful for  
57 estimating the response at doses where a  
58 high-dose mode of action would be less  
59 important.

60           If linear extrapolation is used, the  
61 assessment develops a candidate slope  
62 factor or unit risk for each suitable data set.  
63 These results are arrayed, using common  
64 dose metrics, to show the distribution of  
65 relative potency across various effects and  
66 experimental systems. The assessment then  
67 derives or selects an overall slope factor and  
68 an overall unit risk for the agent, considering  
69 the various dose-response analyses, the  
70 study preferences discussed in section 6, and  
71 the possibility of basing a more robust result  
72 on multiple data sets.

#### 73 **7.5. Considering susceptible** 74 **populations and lifestages**

75           The assessment analyzes the available  
76 information on populations and lifestages  
77 that may be particularly susceptible to each  
78 effect. A tiered approach is used ([U.S. EPA,](#)  
79 [2005a](#), §3.5).

80 1) If an epidemiologic or experimental  
81 study reports quantitative results for a  
82 susceptible population or lifestage, these  
83 data are analyzed to derive separate  
84 toxicity values for susceptible  
85 individuals.

86 2) If data on risk-related parameters allow  
87 comparison of the general population  
88 and susceptible individuals, these data  
89 are used to adjust the general-population  
90 toxicity values for application to  
91 susceptible individuals.

1 3) In the absence of chemical-specific data,  
2 the EPA has developed *age-dependent*  
3 *adjustment factors* for early-life exposure  
4 to potential carcinogens that have a  
5 mutagenic mode of action. There is  
6 evidence of early-life susceptibility to  
7 various carcinogenic agents, but most  
8 epidemiologic studies and cancer  
9 bioassays do not include early-life  
10 exposure. To address the potential for  
11 early-life susceptibility, the EPA  
12 recommends ([U.S. EPA, 2005b](#), §5):

- 13 – 10-fold adjustment for exposures  
14 before age 2 years.
- 15 – 3-fold adjustment for exposures  
16 between ages 2 and 16 years.

## 17 **7.6. Reference values and uncertainty** 18 **factors**

19 An *oral reference dose* or an *inhalation*  
20 *reference concentration* is an estimate of an  
21 exposure (including in susceptible  
22 subgroups) that is likely to be without an  
23 appreciable risk of adverse health effects  
24 over a lifetime ([U.S. EPA, 2002](#), §4.2).  
25 Reference values are typically calculated for  
26 effects other than cancer and for suspected  
27 carcinogens if a well characterized mode of  
28 action indicates that a necessary key event  
29 does not occur below a specific dose.  
30 Reference values provide no information  
31 about risks at higher exposure levels.

32 The assessment characterizes effects  
33 that form the basis for reference values as  
34 adverse, considered to be adverse, or a  
35 precursor to an adverse effect. For  
36 developmental toxicity, reproductive  
37 toxicity, and neurotoxicity there is guidance  
38 on adverse effects and their biologic markers  
39 ([U.S. EPA, 1998, 1996, 1991](#)).

40 To account for uncertainty and  
41 variability in the derivation of a lifetime  
42 human exposure where adverse effects are  
43 not anticipated to occur, reference values are  
44 calculated by applying a series of *uncertainty*  
45 *factors* to the point of departure. If a point of  
46 departure cannot be derived by modeling, a  
47 no-observed-adverse-effect level or a  
48 lowest-observed-adverse-effect level is used

49 instead. The assessment discusses scientific  
50 considerations involving several areas of  
51 variability or uncertainty.

52 **Human variation.** The assessment accounts  
53 for variation in susceptibility across the  
54 human population and the possibility  
55 that the available data may not be  
56 representative of individuals who are  
57 most susceptible to the effect. A factor of  
58 10 is generally used to account for this  
59 variation. This factor is reduced only if  
60 the point of departure is derived or  
61 adjusted specifically for susceptible  
62 individuals (not for a general population  
63 that includes both susceptible and non-  
64 susceptible individuals) ([U.S. EPA, 2002](#),  
65 §4.4.5, [1998](#), §4.2, [1996](#), §4, [1994b](#),  
66 §4.3.9.1, [1991](#), §3.4).

67 **Animal-to-human extrapolation.** If animal  
68 results are used to make inferences  
69 about humans, the assessment adjusts  
70 for cross-species differences. These may  
71 arise from differences in toxicokinetics  
72 or toxicodynamics. Accordingly, if the  
73 point of departure is standardized to  
74 equivalent human terms or is based on  
75 toxicokinetic or dosimetry modeling, a  
76 factor of 10<sup>1/2</sup> (rounded to 3) is applied  
77 to account for the remaining uncertainty  
78 involving toxicokinetic and  
79 toxicodynamic differences. If a  
80 biologically based model adjusts fully for  
81 toxicokinetic and toxicodynamic  
82 differences across species, this factor is  
83 not used. In most other cases, a factor of  
84 10 is applied ([U.S. EPA, 2011, 2002](#),  
85 §4.4.5, [1998](#), §4.2, [1996](#), §4, [1994b](#),  
86 §4.3.9.1, [1991](#), §3.4).

87 **Adverse-effect level to no-observed-**  
88 **adverse-effect level.** If a point of  
89 departure is based on a lowest-  
90 observed-adverse-effect level, the  
91 assessment must infer a dose where  
92 such effects are not expected. This can be  
93 a matter of great uncertainty, especially  
94 if there is no evidence available at lower  
95 doses. A factor of 10 is applied to  
96 account for the uncertainty in making

1 this inference. A factor other than 10  
2 may be used, depending on the  
3 magnitude and nature of the response  
4 and the shape of the dose-response  
5 curve (U.S. EPA, 2002, §4.4.5, 1998, §4.2,  
6 1996, §4, 1994b, §4.3.9.1, 1991, §3.4).

7 **Subchronic-to-chronic exposure.** If a point  
8 of departure is based on subchronic  
9 studies, the assessment considers  
10 whether lifetime exposure could have  
11 effects at lower levels of exposure. A  
12 factor of 10 is applied to account for the  
13 uncertainty in using subchronic studies  
14 to make inferences about lifetime  
15 exposure. This factor may also be  
16 applied for developmental or  
17 reproductive effects if exposure covered  
18 less than the full critical period. A factor  
19 other than 10 may be used, depending  
20 on the duration of the studies and the  
21 nature of the response (U.S. EPA, 2002,  
22 §4.4.5, 1998, §4.2, 1994b, §4.3.9.1).

23 **Incomplete database.** If an incomplete  
24 database raises concern that further  
25 studies might identify a more sensitive  
26 effect, organ system, or lifestage, the  
27 assessment may apply a database  
28 uncertainty factor (U.S. EPA,  
29 2002§§4.4.5, 1998, §4.2, 1996, §4,  
30 1994b, §4.3.9.1, 1991, §3.4). The size of  
31 the factor depends on the nature of the  
32 database deficiency. For example, the  
33 EPA typically follows the suggestion that  
34 a factor of 10 be applied if both a  
35 prenatal toxicity study and a two-  
36 generation reproduction study are  
37 missing and a factor of 10<sup>1/2</sup> if either is  
38 missing (U.S. EPA, 2002, §4.4.5).

39 In this way, the assessment derives  
40 candidate values for each suitable data set  
41 and effect that is credibly associated with the  
42 agent. These results are arrayed, using  
43 common dose metrics, to show where effects  
44 occur across a range of exposures (U.S. EPA,  
45 1994b, §4.3.9).

46 The assessment derives or selects an  
47 *organ- or system-specific reference value* for  
48 each organ or system affected by the agent.

49 The assessment explains the rationale for  
50 each organ/system-specific reference value  
51 (based on, for example, the highest quality  
52 studies, the most sensitive outcome, or a  
53 clustering of values). By providing these  
54 organ/system-specific reference values, IRIS  
55 assessments facilitate subsequent  
56 cumulative risk assessments that consider  
57 the combined effect of multiple agents acting  
58 at a common site or through common  
59 mechanisms (NRC, 2009)..

60 The assessment then selects an overall  
61 reference dose and an overall reference  
62 concentration for the agent to represent  
63 lifetime human exposure levels where  
64 effects are not anticipated to occur. This is  
65 generally the most sensitive organ/system-  
66 specific reference value, though  
67 consideration of study quality and  
68 confidence in each value may lead to a  
69 different selection.

## 70 **7.7. Confidence and uncertainty in the** 71 **reference values**

72 The assessment selects a standard  
73 descriptor to characterize the level of  
74 confidence in each reference value, based on  
75 the likelihood that the value would change  
76 with further testing. Confidence in reference  
77 values is based on quality of the studies used  
78 and completeness of the database, with more  
79 weight given to the latter. The level of  
80 confidence is increased for reference values  
81 based on human data supported by animal  
82 data (U.S. EPA, 1994b, §4.3.9.2).

83 **High confidence:** The reference value is not  
84 likely to change with further testing,  
85 except for mechanistic studies that might  
86 affect the interpretation of prior test  
87 results.

88 **Medium confidence:** This is a matter of  
89 judgment, between high and low  
90 confidence.

91 **Low confidence:** The reference value is  
92 especially vulnerable to change with  
93 further testing.

1 These criteria are consistent with  
2 guidelines for systematic reviews that  
3 evaluate the quality of evidence. These also  
4 focus on whether further research would be  
5 likely to change confidence in the estimate of  
6 effect ([Guyatt et al., 2008a](#)).

7 All assessments discuss the significant  
8 uncertainties encountered in the analysis.  
9 The EPA provides guidance on  
10 characterization of uncertainty ([U.S. EPA,  
11 2005a](#), §3.6). For example, the discussion  
12 distinguishes model uncertainty (lack of  
13 knowledge about the most appropriate  
14 experimental or analytic model) and  
15 parameter uncertainty (lack of knowledge  
16 about the parameters of a model).  
17 Assessments also discuss human variation  
18 (interpersonal differences in biologic  
19 susceptibility or in exposures that modify  
20 the effects of the agent).

---

## 21 References

22 [CDC](#). (Centers for Disease Control and  
23 Prevention). (2004). The health  
24 consequences of smoking: A report of the  
25 Surgeon General. Washington, DC: U.S.  
26 Department of Health and Human  
27 Services.  
28 [http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/library  
29 /smokingconsequences/](http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/library/smokingconsequences/)

30 [Guyatt, GH; Oxman, AD; Vist, GE; Kunz, R;  
31 Falck-Ytter, Y; Alonso-Coello, P;  
32 Schünemann, HJ](#). (2008a). GRADE: An  
33 emerging consensus on rating quality of  
34 evidence and strength of  
35 recommendations. *BMJ* 336: 924-926.  
36 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/bmj.39489.4  
37 70347.AD](http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/bmj.39489.470347.AD)

38 [Guyatt, GH; Oxman, AD; Kunz, R; Vist, GE;  
39 Falck-Ytter, Y; Schünemann, HJ](#). (2008b).  
40 GRADE: What is "quality of evidence"  
41 and why is it important to clinicians?  
42 [Review]. *BMJ* 336: 995-998.  
43 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/bmj.39490.5  
44 51019.BE](http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/bmj.39490.551019.BE)

45 [HEW](#). (U.S. Department of Health, Education  
46 and Welfare). (1964). Smoking and

47 health: Report of the advisory committee  
48 to the surgeon general of the public  
49 health service. Washington, DC: U.S.  
50 Department of Health, Education, and  
51 Welfare.

52 [http://profiles.nlm.nih.gov/ps/retrieve/  
53 ResourceMetadata/NNBBMQ](http://profiles.nlm.nih.gov/ps/retrieve/ResourceMetadata/NNBBMQ)

54 [Hill, AB](#). (1965). The environment and  
55 disease: Association or causation? *Proc R  
56 Soc Med* 58: 295-300.

57 [IARC](#). (International Agency for Research on  
58 Cancer). (2006). Preamble to the IARC  
59 monographs. Lyon, France.  
60 [http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Preamb  
61 le/](http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Preamble/)

62 [IOM](#). (Institute of Medicine), (2008)  
63 Improving the presumptive disability  
64 decision-making process for veterans. In  
65 JM Samet; CC Bodurow (Eds.).  
66 Washington, DC: National Academies  
67 Press.

68 [NRC](#). (National Research Council). (1983).  
69 Risk assessment in the federal  
70 government: Managing the process.  
71 Washington, DC: National Academies  
72 Press.

73 [NRC](#). (National Research Council). (2009).  
74 Science and decisions: Advancing risk  
75 assessment. Washington, DC: National  
76 Academies Press.

77 [Rothman, KJ; Greenland, S](#). (1998). Modern  
78 epidemiology (2nd ed.). Philadelphia, PA:  
79 Lippincott, Williams, & Wilkins.

80 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
81 Agency). (1986a). Guidelines for  
82 mutagenicity risk assessment [EPA  
83 Report]. (EPA/630/R-98/003).  
84 Washington, DC.  
85 <http://www.epa.gov/iris/backgrd.html>

86 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
87 Agency). (1986b). Guidelines for the  
88 health risk assessment of chemical  
89 mixtures. *Fed Reg* 51: 34014-34025.

90 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
91 Agency). (1988). Recommendations for  
92 and documentation of biological values

1 for use in risk assessment [EPA Report].  
2 (EPA/600/6-87/008). Cincinnati, OH.  
3 [http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordis  
4 play.cfm?deid=34855](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=34855)

5 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
6 Agency). (1991). Guidelines for  
7 developmental toxicity risk assessment  
8 [EPA Report]. (EPA/600/FR-91/001).  
9 Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental  
10 Protection Agency, Risk Assessment  
11 Forum.  
12 <http://www.epa.gov/iris/backgrd.html>

13 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
14 Agency). (1994b). Methods for  
15 derivation of inhalation reference  
16 concentrations and application of  
17 inhalation dosimetry [EPA Report].  
18 (EPA/600/8-90/066F). Research  
19 Triangle Park, NC.  
20 [http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordis  
21 play.cfm?deid=71993](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=71993)

22 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
23 Agency). (1996). Guidelines for  
24 reproductive toxicity risk assessment  
25 [EPA Report]. (EPA/630/R-96/009).  
26 Washington, DC.  
27 [http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/p  
28 dfs/REPRO51.PDF](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/REPRO51.PDF)

29 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
30 Agency). (1998). Guidelines for  
31 neurotoxicity risk assessment [EPA  
32 Report]. (EPA/630/R-95/001F).  
33 Washington, DC.  
34 [http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/p  
35 dfs/NEUROTOX.PDF](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/NEUROTOX.PDF)

36 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
37 Agency). (2000). Supplementary  
38 guidance for conducting health risk  
39 assessment of chemical mixtures [EPA  
40 Report]. (EPA/630/R-00/002).

41 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
42 Agency). (2009). EPAs Integrated Risk  
43 Information System: Assessment  
44 development process [EPA Report].  
45 Washington, DC.  
46 <http://epa.gov/iris/process.htm>

47 Washington, DC.  
48 [http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordis  
49 play.cfm?deid=20533](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=20533)

50 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
51 Agency). (2002). A review of the  
52 reference dose and reference  
53 concentration processes [EPA Report].  
54 (EPA/630/P-02/002F). Washington, DC.  
55 [http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordis  
56 play.cfm?deid=51717](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=51717)

57 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
58 Agency). (2005a). Guidelines for  
59 carcinogen risk assessment [EPA  
60 Report]. (EPA/630/P-03/001F).  
61 Washington, DC.  
62 [http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/  
63](http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/)

64 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
65 Agency). (2005b). Supplemental  
66 guidance for assessing susceptibility  
67 from early-life exposure to carcinogens  
68 [EPA Report] (Vol. 113). (EPA/630/R-  
69 03/003F). Washington, DC.  
70 [http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/g  
71 uidelines-carcinogen-supplement.htm](http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/guidelines-carcinogen-supplement.htm)

72 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
73 Agency). (2006a). Approaches for the  
74 application of physiologically based  
75 pharmacokinetic (PBPK) models and  
76 supporting data in risk assessment (Final  
77 Report) [EPA Report]. (EPA/600/R-  
78 05/043F). Washington, DC.  
79 [http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordis  
80 play.cfm?deid=157668](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=157668)

81 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
82 Agency). (2006b). A framework for  
83 assessing health risk of environmental  
84 exposures to children [EPA Report].  
85 (EPA/600/R-05/093F). Washington, DC.  
86 [http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordis  
87 play.cfm?deid=158363](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=158363)

88 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
89 Agency). (2010). Integrated science  
90 assessment for carbon monoxide [EPA  
91 Report]. (EPA/600/R-09/019F).  
92 Research Triangle Park, NC.  
93 [http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordis  
94 play.cfm?deid=218686](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=218686)

1 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
2 Agency). (2011). Recommended use of  
3 body weight 3/4 as the default method  
4 in derivation of the oral reference dose  
5 [EPA Report]. (EPA/100/R11/0001).  
6 Washington, DC.  
7 [http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/i](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/interspecies-extrapolation.htm)  
8 [nterspecies-extrapolation.htm](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/interspecies-extrapolation.htm)

9 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
10 Agency). (2012a). Advances in inhalation  
11 gas dosimetry for derivation of a  
23

24 August 2013

25

12 reference concentration (rfc) and use in  
13 risk assessment [EPA Report].  
14 (EPA/600/R-12/044). Washington, DC.  
15 [http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordis](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=244650)  
16 [play.cfm?deid=244650](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=244650)

17 [U.S. EPA](#). (U.S. Environmental Protection  
18 Agency). (2012b). Benchmark dose  
19 technical guidance. (EPA/100/R-  
20 12/001). Washington, DC.  
21 [http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/p](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/benchmark_dose_guidance.pdf)  
22 [dfs/benchmark\\_dose\\_guidance.pdf](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/benchmark_dose_guidance.pdf)

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

### *Occurrence and Health Effects*

Ammonia occurs naturally in air, soil, and water and is produced by humans and other animals as part of normal biological processes. Ammonia is also used as an agricultural fertilizer. Exposure to ammonia occurs primarily through breathing air containing ammonia gas, and may also occur via diet or direct skin contact.

Health effects observed at levels exceeding naturally-occurring concentrations are generally limited to the site of direct contact with ammonia (skin, eyes, respiratory tract, and digestive tract). Short-term exposure to high levels of ammonia in humans can cause irritation and serious burns on the skin and in the mouth, lungs, and eyes. Chronic exposure to airborne ammonia can increase the risk of respiratory irritation, cough, wheezing, tightness in the chest, and reduction in the normal function of the lung in humans. Studies in experimental animals similarly suggest that breathing ammonia at sufficiently high concentrations can result in effects on the respiratory system. Animal studies also suggest that exposure to high levels of ammonia in air or water may adversely affect other organs, such as the stomach, liver, adrenal gland, kidney, and spleen. There is inadequate information to evaluate the carcinogenicity of ammonia.

### **Effects Other Than Cancer Observed Following Oral Exposure**

There are few oral toxicity studies for ammonia. Gastric toxicity may be a hazard for ammonia based on evidence from case reports in humans and mechanistic studies in experimental animals. Evidence in humans is limited to case reports of individuals suffering from gastrointestinal effects from ingesting household cleaning solutions containing ammonia or from biting into capsules of ammonia smelling salts; the relevance of these acute findings to chronic, low-level ammonia exposure is unclear. The experimental animal toxicity database for ammonia lacks standard toxicity studies that evaluate a range of tissues/organs and endpoints. In rats, gastrointestinal effects, characterized as increased epithelial cell migration in the mucosa of the stomach leading to decreased thickness of the gastric mucosa, were reported following short-term and subchronic exposures to ammonia via ingestion ([Hata et al., 1994](#); [Tsuji et al., 1993](#); [Kawano et al., 1991](#)). While these studies provide consistent evidence of changes in the gastric mucosa associated with exposure to ammonia in drinking water, the investigators reported no evidence of microscopic lesions, gastritis, or ulceration in the stomachs of these rats.

Given the limited scope of toxicity testing of ingested ammonia and questions concerning the adversity of the gastric mucosal findings in rats, the available oral database for ammonia was

1 considered insufficient to characterize toxicity outcomes and dose-response relationships, and **an**  
2 **oral reference dose (RfD) for ammonia was not derived.**

#### 3 4 **Effects Other Than Cancer Observed Following Inhalation Exposure**

5 Respiratory effects have been identified as a hazard following inhalation exposure to  
6 ammonia. Evidence for respiratory toxicity associated with inhaled ammonia comes from studies  
7 in humans and animals. Cross-sectional occupational studies involving chronic exposure to  
8 ammonia in industrial settings provide evidence of an increased prevalence of respiratory  
9 symptoms ([Rahman et al., 2007](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#)) and decreased lung function ([Rahman et al.,](#)  
10 [2007](#); [Ali et al., 2001](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#); [Bhat and Ramaswamy, 1993](#)). Other occupational studies  
11 of exposure to ammonia when used as a disinfectant or cleaning product, for example in health care  
12 workers and cleaning workers, provide additional evidence of effects on asthma, asthma symptoms,  
13 and pulmonary function, using a variety of study designs ([Arif and Delclos, 2012](#); [Dumas et al.,](#)  
14 [2012](#); [Lemiere et al., 2012](#); [Vizcaya et al., 2011](#); [Zock et al., 2007](#); [Medina-Ramón et al., 2006](#);  
15 [Medina-Ramón et al., 2005](#)). Additional evidence of respiratory effects of ammonia is seen in  
16 studies of pulmonary function in livestock workers, specifically in the studies that accounted for  
17 effects of co-exposures to other agents such as endotoxin and dust ([Donham et al., 2000](#); [Reynolds](#)  
18 [et al., 1996](#); [Donham et al., 1995](#); [Preller et al., 1995](#); [Heederik et al., 1990](#)). Controlled volunteer  
19 studies of ammonia inhalation and case reports of injury in humans with inhalation exposure to  
20 ammonia provide support for the respiratory system as a target of ammonia toxicity. Additionally,  
21 respiratory effects were observed in several animal species following short-term and subchronic  
22 inhalation exposures to ammonia.

23 The experimental toxicology literature for ammonia also provides evidence that inhaled  
24 ammonia may be associated with toxicity to target organs other than the respiratory system,  
25 including the liver, adrenal gland, kidney, spleen, heart, and immune system, at concentrations  
26 higher than those associated with respiratory system effects. Little evidence exists for these effects  
27 relative to the evidence for respiratory effects.

**Inhalation Reference Concentration (RfC) for Effects Other Than Cancer**

**Table ES-1. Summary of reference concentration (RfC) derivation**

Critical effect	Point of departure <sup>a</sup>	UF	Chronic RfC
Decreased lung function and respiratory symptoms  Occupational epidemiology studies  <a href="#">Holness et al. (1989)</a> , supported by <a href="#">Rahman et al. (2007)</a> , <a href="#">Ballal et al. (1998)</a> , and <a href="#">Ali et al. (2001)</a>	NOAEL <sub>ADJ</sub> : 3.1 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	10	0.3 mg/m <sup>3</sup>

<sup>a</sup>Because the study involved workplace exposure conditions, the NOAEL of 8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup> was adjusted for continuous exposure based on the ratio of VE<sub>h</sub>o (human occupational default minute volume of 10 m<sup>3</sup> breathed during an 8-hour workday) to VE<sub>h</sub> (human ambient default minute volume of 20 m<sup>3</sup> breathed during the entire day) and an exposure of 5 days out of 7 days.

NOAEL = no-observed-adverse-effect level; UF = uncertainty factor

The study of ammonia exposure in workers in a soda ash plant by [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#), with support from three studies in urea fertilizer plants by [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#), [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#), and [Ali et al. \(2001\)](#), was identified as the principal study for RfC derivation. Respiratory effects, characterized as increased respiratory symptoms (including cough, wheezing, and other asthma-related symptoms) and decreased lung function in workers exposed to ammonia, were selected as the critical effect. [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) found no differences in the prevalence of respiratory symptoms or lung function between workers (mean exposure 6.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) and the control group, and no differences when stratified by exposure level (highest exposure group, >8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>). [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#) observed an increased prevalence of respiratory symptoms and decreased lung function in workers exposed in a plant with a mean ammonia concentration of 18.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, but not in workers in a second plant exposed to a mean concentration of 4.9 mg/m<sup>3</sup>. [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#) observed an increased prevalence of respiratory symptoms among workers in one factory with exposures ranging from 2 to 27.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>,<sup>1</sup> but no increase in another factory with exposures ranging from 0.02–7 mg/m<sup>3</sup>. A companion study by [Ali et al. \(2001\)](#) also observed decreased lung function among workers in the higher exposure factory.

Considerations in selecting the principal study for RfC derivation include the higher confidence placed in the measures of ammonia exposure in [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#), evaluation of both respiratory symptoms and lung function parameters in this study, and the fact that the estimate of the no-observed-adverse-effect level (NOAEL) for respiratory effects of 8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup> from [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) was the highest of the studies with adequate exposure-response information. Because a high level of control of exposures in the plant studied by [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) resulted in relatively

<sup>1</sup>This concentration range does not include exposures in the urea store (number of employees = 6; range of ammonia concentrations = 90–130.4 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) because employees in this area were required to wear full protective clothing, thus minimizing potential exposure.

1 low ammonia levels in this facility, the [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study does not demonstrate a  
2 relationship between ammonia exposure and respiratory effects. Therefore, the [Holness et al.](#)  
3 [\(1989\)](#) study is identified as the principal study only as part of a collection of epidemiology studies  
4 of industrial settings that includes studies with higher workplace ammonia concentrations in which  
5 respiratory effects were observed.

6 In summary, the study of ammonia exposure in workers in a soda ash plant by [Holness et al.](#)  
7 [\(1989\)](#) was identified as the principal study for RfC derivation, with support from [Rahman et al.](#)  
8 [\(2007\)](#), [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#), and [Ali et al. \(2001\)](#), and respiratory effects were identified as the  
9 critical effect. The NOAEL of 8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup> (NOAEL<sub>ADJ</sub> = 3.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, i.e., adjusted to continuous  
10 exposure) from the [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study was used as the point of departure (POD) for RfC  
11 derivation.

12 **An RfC of 0.3 mg/m<sup>3</sup> was calculated** by dividing the POD (adjusted for continuous  
13 exposure, i.e., NOAEL<sub>ADJ</sub>) by a composite uncertainty factor (UF) of 10 to account for potentially  
14 susceptible individuals in the absence of data evaluating variability of response to inhaled ammonia  
15 in the human population.

### 16 **Confidence in the Chronic Inhalation RfC**

17 Study – medium

18 Database – medium

19 RfC – medium

20  
21  
22  
23 Consistent with EPA's *Methods for Derivation of Inhalation Reference Concentrations and*  
24 *Application of Inhalation Dosimetry* ([U.S. EPA, 1994](#)), the overall confidence in the RfC is medium  
25 and reflects medium confidence in the principal study (adequate design, conduct, and reporting of  
26 the principal study; limited by small sample size and identification of a NOAEL only) and medium  
27 confidence in the database, which includes occupational and volunteer studies and studies in  
28 animals that are mostly of subchronic duration. There are no studies of developmental toxicity, and  
29 studies of reproductive and other systemic endpoints are limited; however, reproductive,  
30 developmental, and other systemic effects are not expected at the RfC because it is well  
31 documented that ammonia is endogenously produced in humans and animals, ammonia  
32 concentrations in blood are homeostatically regulated to remain at low levels, and ammonia  
33 concentrations in air at the POD are not expected to alter homeostasis.

### 34 **Evidence for Carcinogenicity**

35 Consistent with EPA's *Guidelines for Carcinogen Risk Assessment* ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#)), there is  
36 “**inadequate information to assess carcinogenic potential**” for ammonia, based on the absence  
37 of ammonia carcinogenicity studies in humans and a single lifetime drinking water study of  
38 ammonia in mice [Toth \(1972\)](#) that showed no evidence of carcinogenic potential. There is limited  
39 evidence that ammonia may act as a cancer promoter ([Tsuji et al., 1995](#); [Tsuji et al., 1992b](#)). The  
40

1 available genotoxicity studies are inadequate to characterize the genotoxic potential of ammonia. A  
2 **quantitative cancer assessment for ammonia was not conducted.**

### 4 **Susceptible Populations and Lifestages**

5 Hyperammonemia is a condition of elevated levels of circulating ammonia that can occur in  
6 individuals with severe diseases of the liver or kidney or with hereditary urea [CO(NH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>] cycle  
7 disorders. These elevated ammonia levels can predispose an individual to encephalopathy due to  
8 the ability of ammonia to cross the blood-brain barrier; these effects are especially marked in  
9 newborn infants. Thus, individuals with disease conditions that lead to hyperammonemia may be  
10 more susceptible to the effects of ammonia from external sources, but there are no studies that  
11 specifically support this susceptibility.

12 Studies of the toxicity of ammonia in children or young animals compared to other  
13 lifestages that would support an evaluation of childhood susceptibility have not been conducted.

### 15 **Key Issues Addressed in Assessment**

#### 16 ***Endogenous Ammonia***

17 Ammonia, which is produced endogenously, has been detected in the expired air of healthy  
18 volunteers. Ammonia concentrations in breath exhaled from the mouth or oral cavity (0.085–  
19 2.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) are higher and more variable than concentrations measured in breath exhaled from the  
20 nose and trachea (0.0092–0.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) (Appendix E, Section E.1 (Elimination) and Table E-1).  
21 Concentrations exhaled from the mouth and oral cavity are largely attributed to the production of  
22 ammonia via bacterial degradation of food protein in the oral cavity or gastrointestinal tract, and  
23 can be influenced by factors such as diet, oral hygiene, and age. In contrast, the lower ammonia  
24 concentrations measured in breath exhaled from the nose and trachea appear to better represent  
25 levels at the alveolar interface of the lung or in the tracheo-bronchial region and are thought to be  
26 more relevant to understanding systemic levels of ammonia than ammonia in breath exhaled from  
27 the mouth.

28 The studies of ammonia in exhaled breath were conducted in environments with  
29 measureable levels of ambient (exogenous) ammonia and not in ammonia-free environments.  
30 Because concentrations of trace compounds in exhaled breath may be correlated with their  
31 ambient concentrations (e.g., [Spanel et al. \(2013\)](#) found that approximately 70% of inhaled  
32 ammonia is retained in exhaled breath), it is likely that ammonia concentrations in breath exhaled  
33 from the nose would be lower if the inspired air were free of ammonia. Therefore, levels of  
34 ammonia in exhaled breath reported in the literature would need to be adjusted if they were to be  
35 used as a measure of systemic ammonia.

36 Ammonia concentrations measured in breath exhaled from the nose and trachea,  
37 considered to be more representative of systemic ammonia levels than breath exhaled from the  
38 mouth, are lower than the ammonia RfC of 0.3 mg/m<sup>3</sup> by a factor of threefold or more. Although  
39 the RfC falls within the range of concentrations measured in the mouth or oral cavity, ammonia  
40 exhaled by an individual is rapidly diluted in the larger volume of ambient air and would not

1 contribute significantly to ammonia exposure. Further, such endogenous exposures existed in the  
2 occupational epidemiology studies that served as the basis for the ammonia RfC.

3

4

# LITERATURE SEARCH STRATEGY | STUDY SELECTION AND EVALUATION

The primary, peer-reviewed literature pertaining to ammonia was identified through a keyword search of the databases listed in Table LS-1. The detailed search string used for searching these databases is provided in Appendix D, Table D-1. The original literature search was conducted through March 2012; an updated literature search was conducted using the same strategy from March 2012 through March 2013. References from health assessments developed by other national and international health agencies were also examined. References were also identified by reviewing the list of references cited in key health effects studies of ammonia (“backwards searching”), and a “forward search” of studies citing the development of an asthma-specific job exposure matrix ([Kennedy et al., 2000](#)); see Appendix D for additional search strategy details. Other peer-reviewed information, including review articles and literature necessary for the interpretation of ammonia-induced health effects, were retrieved and included in the assessment where appropriate. EPA requested the public submit additional data on December 21, 2007 and November 2, 2009 ([U.S. EPA, 2009b, 2007](#)); no submissions were received.

Figure LS-1 depicts the literature search and study selection strategy and the number of references obtained at each stage of literature screening. Approximately 23,000 references were identified with the initial keyword search. Based on a secondary keyword search followed by a preliminary manual screen of titles or abstracts by a toxicologist, approximately 1,032 references were identified that provided information potentially relevant to characterizing the health effects or physical and chemical properties of ammonia. A more detailed review of titles, abstracts, and/or papers, and a review of references within identified papers, pared this to 40 epidemiological studies (i.e., studies of workers exposed to ammonia in industrial settings or through the use of ammonia in cleaning products, livestock farmers, or short-term exposure in volunteers as well background epidemiology method papers), 44 case reports, 61 unique oral or inhalation animal studies and 105 other studies (e.g., studies that provided supporting information on physical and chemical properties, mode of action, and toxicokinetics). The majority of the toxicokinetics studies came from the [ATSDR \(2004\)](#) *Toxicological Profile of Ammonia*<sup>2</sup> or were identified based on a focused keyword search (e.g., for studies on ammonia in exhaled breath or ammonia in fetal circulation).

---

<sup>2</sup>Portions of this Toxicological Review were developed under a Memorandum of Understanding with the Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry (ATSDR) and were adapted from the Toxicological Profile for Ammonia ([ATSDR, 2004](#)) and the references cited in that document as part of a collaborative effort in the development of human health toxicological assessments for the purposes of making more efficient use of available resources and to share scientific information.

**Table LS-1. Details of the literature search strategy employed for ammonia**

Database	Keywords <sup>a</sup>
Pubmed	<p><b>Chemical names (CASRN):</b> ammonia (7664-41-7); ammonium hydroxide (1336-21-6)<sup>b</sup></p> <p>Synonyms: spirit of hartshorn; aquammonia</p> <p><b>Initial keyword search</b></p> <p><u>Standard toxicology search (see Appendix D for specific keywords used)</u></p> <p>toxicity (including duration, effects to children and occupational exposure); development; reproduction; teratogenicity; exposure routes; pharmacokinetics; toxicokinetics; metabolism; body fluids; endocrinology; carcinogenicity; genotoxicity; antagonists; inhibitors</p> <p><u>Chemical-specific keywords</u></p> <p>respiration; metabolism; breath tests; inhalation; air; breath; exhalation; biological markers; analysis</p> <p><b>Secondary keyword search<sup>c</sup></b></p> <p>reproductive; developmental; teratogen; gastrointestinal; stomach; gastric AND mucosa, cancer OR tumor; genotoxicity; kidney OR spleen AND toxicity; exhaled breath; respiratory irritation, symptom OR disease, including dyspnea, bronchitis, pneumonitis, asthma; lung; pulmonary function; chest tightness; inflammation; congestion; edema; hemorrhage; discharge; epithelium; immune; immunosuppression; hypersensitivity; skin lesion; erythema; host resistance; bacterial colonization; T-cell; liver function OR toxicity; fatty liver; clinical chemistry; adrenal; heart AND toxicity; myocardium; lacrimation; ocular symptoms; blood pH; brain AND amino acid; neurotransmitter</p> <p>The following terms were used to filter out reference not relevant to the evaluation of the health effects of ammonia: hyperammonemia; ammonemia; hepatic coma; liver failure; Reye syndrome; hepatic encephalopathy; cirrhosis; fish; daphnia; crustaceans; amphibians</p>
Toxcenter	
Toxline	
Current Contents (2008 and 2010 only)	
TSCATS	
ChemID	
Chemfinder	
CCRIS	Searched by chemical names (including synonyms) and CASRNs <sup>b</sup>
HSDB	
GENETOX	
RTECS	

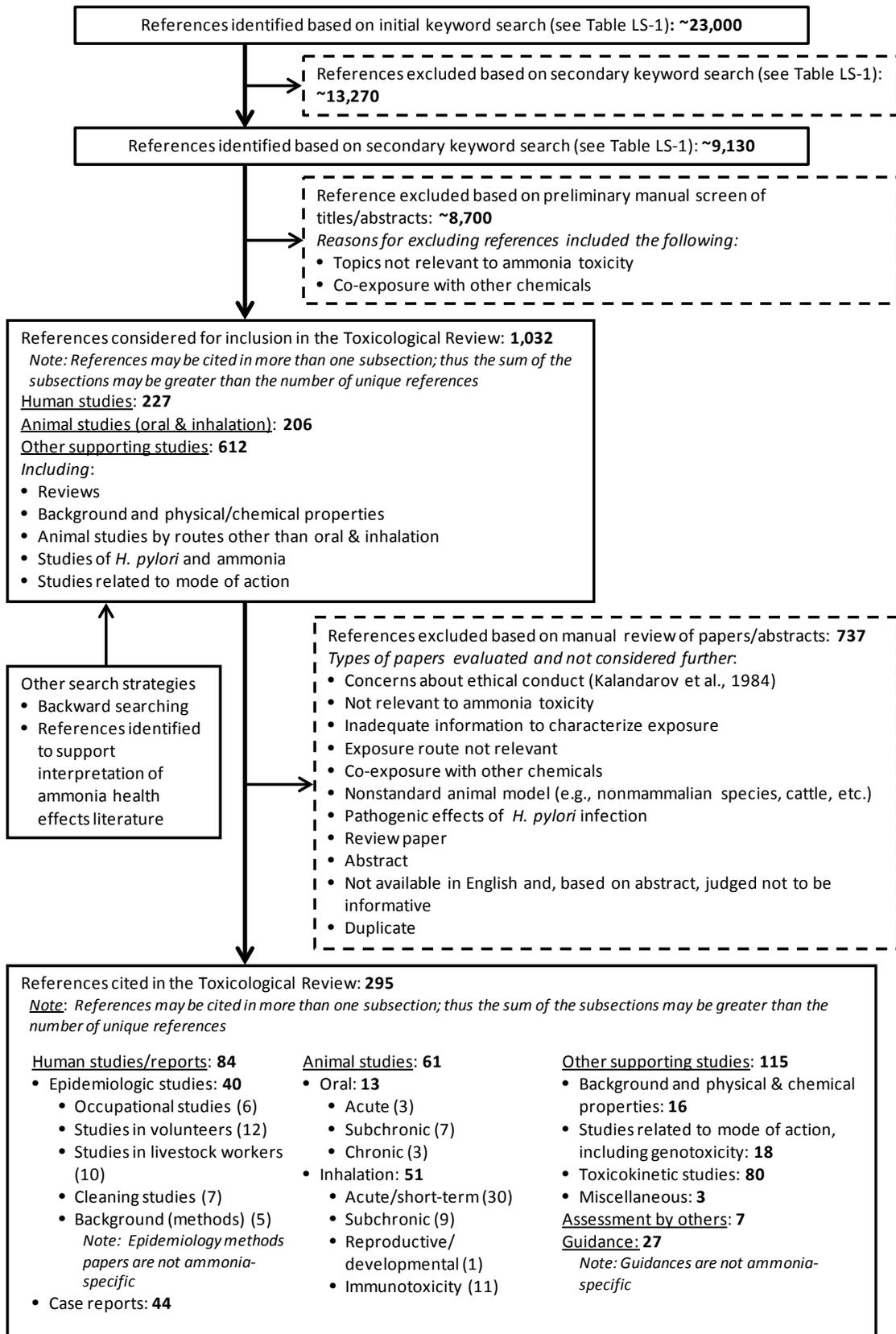
<sup>a</sup>The use of certain keywords in a given database was contingent on number and type of results. The large number of search results required restriction of search terms to filter out references not relevant to evaluation of ammonia health effects and limiting metabolism results to studies in animals and humans.

<sup>b</sup>As discussed in the Preface, literature on ammonium salts was not included in this review because of the uncertainty as to whether the anion of the salt can influence the toxicity of the ammonium compound (see also Appendix C, Table C-1).

<sup>c</sup>Secondary keywords were selected from an understanding of the targets of ammonia toxicity gained from review of papers identified in literature searches conducted at the start of document development and relevant review documents.

CASRN = Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number; CCRIS = Chemical Carcinogenesis Research Information System; HSDB = Hazardous Substances Data Bank; RTECS = Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances; TSCATS = Toxic Substance Control Act Test Submission Database

## Toxicological Review of Ammonia



**Figure LS-1. Study selection strategy.**

1  
2  
3  
4

1 Selection of studies for inclusion in the Toxicological Review was based on consideration of  
2 the extent to which the study was informative and relevant to the assessment and general study  
3 quality considerations. In general, the relevance and scientific quality of the available studies was  
4 evaluated as outlined in the Preamble and in EPA guidance (i.e., *A Review of the Reference Dose and*  
5 *Reference Concentration Processes* ([U.S. EPA, 2002](#)) and *Methods for Derivation of Inhalation*  
6 *Reference Concentrations and Application of Inhaled Dosimetry* ([U.S. EPA, 1994](#))).

### 8 ***Considerations for evaluation of epidemiology studies***

9 Case reports are often anecdotal and describe unusual or extreme exposure situations,  
10 providing little information that would be useful for characterizing chronic health hazards.  
11 Ammonia case studies were only briefly reviewed; representative citations from the collection of  
12 case reports are provided as supplemental information in Appendix E, Section E.2.

13 Epidemiology studies of chronic exposure to ammonia have primarily focused on industrial  
14 worker populations, workers exposed to ammonia as a cleaning or disinfectant product, and  
15 livestock farmers. The observational epidemiology studies identified in Figure LS-1 (i.e., the studies  
16 considered most informative for evaluating ammonia toxicity from chronic exposure) are  
17 summarized in evidence tables (i.e., Tables 1-1, 1-2, and 1-7). Evaluation of the studies summarized  
18 in the evidence tables is provided in Appendix D (Tables D-2, D-3, and D-4 corresponding to Tables  
19 1-1, 1-2, and 1-7, respectively). This evaluation process addressed aspects relating to the selection  
20 of study participants, exposure parameters, outcome measurement, confounding, and statistical  
21 analysis, as discussed below for each set of studies.

### 23 Studies of Industrial Settings

#### 24 *Selection of study participants*

25 All of the studies were cross-sectional analyses in occupational settings. The workers were  
26 healthy enough to remain in the work area for a considerable time; with one exception, mean  
27 duration ranged from 52 months to 18 years. One study ([Bhat and Ramaswamy, 1993](#)) grouped  
28 workers into those exposed for up to 10 years and those with more than 10 years of exposure; a  
29 minimum exposure duration was not provided. In general, these designs may result in a “healthy  
30 worker” bias. In addition, the workers in these studies are not representative of the general  
31 population, as they do not include children or women. These aspects of the study design may result  
32 in an underestimate of the risk of health effects of ammonia exposure, as the worker population  
33 may not exhibit health effects (such as decreased lung function or increased prevalence of  
34 respiratory symptoms) to the same degree that would be seen in the general population under the  
35 same conditions.

#### 37 *Exposure parameters*

38 Exposure methods differ across these occupational studies, which makes comparison of  
39 ammonia measurements among the studies difficult. Spectrophotometric absorption measures of  
40 areas samples ([Ali et al., 2001](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#)) are not directly comparable to direct-reading  
41 diffusion methods used to analysis personal samples ([Rahman et al., 2007](#)) or to the NIOSH-

## ***Toxicological Review of Ammonia***

1 recommended protocol for personal sampling and analysis of airborne contaminants ([Holness et al.,](#)  
2 [1989](#)). In the study by [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#), exposure concentrations were determined by both the  
3 Dräger tube and Dräger PAC III methods. The Dräger tube method yielded concentrations of  
4 ammonia in the two plants studied that were approximately fourfold higher than the  
5 concentrations obtained by the Dräger PAC III method; a strong correlation between measurements  
6 by the two methods was reported. [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#) stated that their measurements indicated  
7 only relative differences in exposures between workers and production areas, and did not identify  
8 one analytical measure as the more valid of the two. Based on communication with technical  
9 support at Dräger Safety Inc. ([Bacom and Yanosky, 2010](#)), EPA considered the PAC III instrument to  
10 be a more sensitive monitoring technology than the Dräger tubes. Ammonia concentrations based  
11 on the PAC III method were also in line with concentrations reported in other studies. Therefore,  
12 exposure levels based on PAC III air measurements of ammonia were used in the current health  
13 assessment to characterize the exposure-response relationship in the [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#) study.

14 In the [Hamid and El-Gazzar \(1996\)](#) study, no direct measurement of ammonia exposure was  
15 made; blood urea was used as a surrogate measure of ammonia exposure. The correlation of blood  
16 urea with ammonia is not reported by the authors. EPA considered this a major limitation of this  
17 study, based on other data indicating no correlation between ammonia levels in air and serum urea  
18 levels in a study of six groups of workers with varying types of exposure ([Giroux and Ferrières,](#)  
19 [1998](#)). No exposure measurements of ammonia were used in the study by [Bhat and Ramaswamy](#)  
20 [\(1993\)](#); EPA considers the lack of exposure measure in this study to be a major limitation.

### *Outcome measurement*

21  
22  
23 Assessment of respiratory symptoms in these studies ([Rahman et al., 2007](#); [Ballal et al.,](#)  
24 [1998](#); [Holness et al., 1989](#)) was based on three different questionnaires; each of these, however, is a  
25 standardized, validated questionnaire. Self-reporting of types and severity of respiratory  
26 symptoms could be biased by the knowledge of exposure, for example, in studies comparing factory  
27 workers to office workers. EPA evaluated this non-blinded outcome assessment as a potential bias.  
28 In each of these studies, comparisons were made across exposure categories among the exposed;  
29 EPA concluded that the non-blinded outcome assessment as a potential bias is unlikely in these  
30 types of comparisons. One study also compared exposed to nonexposed, and observed little  
31 differences in symptom prevalence between these groups ([Holness et al., 1989](#)). Thus, EPA  
32 concluded that the non-blinded outcome assessment was not a major bias in this analysis either.  
33 Assessment of lung function was performed by standard spirometry protocols in four studies  
34 ([Rahman et al., 2007](#); [Ali et al., 2001](#); [Bhat and Ramaswamy, 1993](#); [Holness et al., 1989](#)). EPA did  
35 not consider any of these procedures to be a source of bias or limitation.

36

1            *Confounding*

2            Co-exposures to other ambient chemicals in urea fertilizer factories included inorganic  
3 gases (nitrogen dioxide and sulfur dioxide) and dust. In one of these studies ([Rahman et al., 2007](#)),  
4 nitrogen dioxide was measured concurrently with ammonia and found to be below detection limits  
5 for all areas (urea plant, ammonia plant, and administration area). The other urea fertilizer studies  
6 ([Ali et al., 2001](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#); [Hamid and El-Gazzar, 1996](#)) did not describe potential co-  
7 exposures. [It appears from the exposure measurements that the plant in [Ali et al. \(2001\)](#) is  
8 “Factory A” in [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#)]. In the fertilizer plant in [Bhat and Ramaswamy \(1993\)](#), co-  
9 exposures are not discussed, but the workers are grouped based on different parts of the plant  
10 (ammonia, urea, and diammonium phosphate); effects observed with respect to lung function tests  
11 were similar in magnitude, albeit slightly stronger, in the ammonia plant workers compared with  
12 the urea plant workers. One study was conducted in a soda ash production plant ([Holness et al.,](#)  
13 [1989](#)). No measurements of co-exposures were described in this study, but the authors note the  
14 high level of control of exposures (resulting in low ammonia levels) in this facility. Because of the  
15 lack of demonstration of co-exposures correlated with ammonia levels in these studies, and lack of  
16 demonstration of stronger associations between potential co-exposures and respiratory outcomes,  
17 EPA concluded that confounding by other workplace exposures, although a potential concern, was  
18 unlikely to be a major limitation.

19            The analyses of respiratory symptoms and lung function may also be confounded by  
20 smoking. In these five studies, analyses accounted for smoking as follows: the analysis included  
21 either an adjustment for smoking ([Rahman et al., 2007](#); [Holness et al., 1989](#)), the exclusion of  
22 smokers ([Bhat and Ramaswamy, 1993](#)), or stratification of the results by smoking status ([Ali et al.,](#)  
23 [2001](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#)). EPA did not consider potential confounding by smoking to be a major  
24 limitation of these studies. In reviewing the study of liver function by [Hamid and El-Gazzar \(1996\)](#),  
25 however, EPA noted the lack of information on smoking habits or use of alcohol (another exposure  
26 potentially affecting liver function tests) to be a major limitation.

27  
28            *Statistical analysis*

29            EPA considered the statistical analysis in the epidemiological studies ([Rahman et al., 2007](#);  
30 [Ali et al., 2001](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#); [Hamid and El-Gazzar, 1996](#); [Bhat and Ramaswamy, 1993](#); [Holness](#)  
31 [et al., 1989](#)) to be adequate and appropriate. Although the type of statistical testing was not  
32 specified in [Hamid and El-Gazzar \(1996\)](#), the results were presented in sufficient detail to allow  
33 interpretation of the data and analysis. Sample size, an important consideration with respect to  
34 statistical power, was also considered. EPA noted the small number of exposed workers and low  
35 levels of exposure in the study by [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) as limitations that could result in “false  
36 negative” results (i.e., a test result indicating a lack of association, whereas, in fact, a positive  
37 association between exposure and a health effect exists).

1 Studies of Health Care and Cleaning Settings

2 EPA also evaluated the studies that examined exposure to ammonia when used as a  
3 cleaning or disinfectant product. EPA noted the potential for the “healthy worker” bias arising from  
4 movement out of jobs by affected individuals in most of these studies ([Le Moual et al., 2008](#)). This  
5 issue was less of a concern in the study by [Zock et al. \(2007\)](#), which was conducted in a general  
6 (non-occupational) population sample, focusing on cleaning activities in the home.

7 None of these studies used a direct measure of ammonia exposure in the analysis,  
8 precluding interpretation of the results in relation to an absolute level of exposure. The limited  
9 data available concerning exposure levels in cleaning scenarios found median exposures of 0.6 to  
10 5.4 ppm (0.4 to 3.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>), with peaks exceeding 50 ppm (35 mg/m<sup>3</sup>), in a small study (n = 9)  
11 using personal samples during a domestic cleaning session ([Medina-Ramón et al., 2005](#)). Although  
12 an absolute level of exposure is not available, the relative ranking of exposure used in these studies  
13 does allow examination of relative risk in relation to relative levels of exposure. Key considerations  
14 regarding the validity of the exposure measures are the specificity of the classification and the  
15 extent to which classification could be influenced by knowledge of the disease or symptoms under  
16 study. Methodological research has reported underestimation of self-reported exposure to specific  
17 products by health care workers, and differential reporting by disease status (i.e., asthma) for self-  
18 reported use of cleaning products in patient care, but not in instrument cleaning or building  
19 materials ([Donnay et al., 2011](#); [Delclos et al., 2009](#); [Kennedy et al., 2000](#)). Two of these studies used  
20 an exposure assessment protocol that incorporated an independent, expert review, blinded to  
21 disease status ([Dumas et al., 2012](#); [Lemiere et al., 2012](#)), and one study collected exposure  
22 information using a 2-week daily diary ([Medina-Ramón et al., 2006](#)). EPA considered these to be  
23 the strongest of the exposure protocols used within this set of studies.

24 Five of the studies in this set of studies used standard protocols for the assessment of  
25 asthma symptoms in epidemiological studies ([Arif and Delclos, 2012](#); [Dumas et al., 2012](#); [Vizcaya et  
26 al., 2011](#); [Zock et al., 2007](#); [Medina-Ramón et al., 2005](#)), and one study included a clinical  
27 assessment protocol designed specifically for the assessment of occupational asthma ([Lemiere et  
28 al., 2012](#)). Details of the specific questions were provided, and EPA did not consider any of these  
29 methods to be a limitation in terms of specificity of the outcome. The study by [Medina-Ramón et al.  
30 \(2006\)](#) collected information on daily respiratory symptoms in a two-week diary, and also trained  
31 the participants to measure peak expiratory flow three times daily. EPA considered the potential  
32 for knowledge of use of cleaning products to influence perception of symptoms to be a possible  
33 limitation of this study, and also noted a lack of information about the reliability of the pulmonary  
34 function measures.

35 All of these studies addressed the potential for smoking to act as a confounder in the  
36 analysis. Two of the studies reported relatively weak correlations between ammonia and other  
37 products assessed ([Zock et al., 2007](#); [Medina-Ramón et al., 2005](#)) and one study reported stronger  
38 associations with ammonia than with bleach ([Dumas et al., 2012](#)). Based on this information, EPA  
39 did not consider potential confounding to be a major limitation of this set of studies.

1 EPA considered the statistical analysis in this set of studies to be appropriate. One study,  
2 however, was limited in terms of the level of detail provided pertaining to the results for ammonia  
3 from multivariate models ([Medina-Ramón et al., 2005](#)).

#### 4 5 Studies of Livestock Farmers

6 EPA also evaluated a set of studies conducted among livestock farmers. As with the other  
7 occupational studies discussed above, the selection of sensitive individuals out of the workforce  
8 would be a potential bias in cross-sectional studies in this type of population.

9 Among the studies examining pulmonary function, two studies used area-based exposure  
10 sampling in animal confinement buildings ([Monsó et al., 2004](#); [Zejda et al., 1994](#)), one study used  
11 area samples taken in conjunction with specific tasks and calculated a personal exposure measure  
12 taking into account duration spent in specific locations and tasks ([Heederik et al., 1990](#)), and four  
13 studies collected personal samples over a workshift ([Donham et al., 2000](#); [Reynolds et al., 1996](#);  
14 [Preller et al., 1995](#)), or an unspecified time period ([Donham et al., 1995](#)). EPA considered the use of  
15 the area-based samples without consideration of duration to be limitations of the studies by [Zejda](#)  
16 [et al. \(1994\)](#) and [Monsó et al. \(2004\)](#).

17 All of the studies reported using a standard spirometric technique; five studies compared  
18 two measures per individual (i.e., pre- and post-shift) ([Monsó et al., 2004](#); [Donham et al., 2000](#);  
19 [Reynolds et al., 1996](#); [Heederik et al., 1990](#)) and two studies used a single pulmonary function  
20 measure, adjusted for height, age, and smoking variables ([Preller et al., 1995](#); [Zejda et al., 1994](#)).  
21 EPA did not consider any of these outcome measures to be limitations in these studies.

22 Five of these studies controlled for co-exposures (e.g., endotoxin, dust, disinfectants)  
23 ([Reynolds et al., 1996](#); [Donham et al., 1995](#); [Preller et al., 1995](#)), noted only weak correlations (i.e.,  
24 Spearman  $r < 0.20$ ) between ammonia and dust or endotoxin ([Donham et al., 2000](#)), or observed  
25 associations with ammonia but not with endotoxin or dust measures ([Heederik et al., 1990](#)). The  
26 two studies that did not address confounding were those that also used the more limited exposure  
27 measure ([Monsó et al., 2004](#); [Zejda et al., 1994](#)).

28 Based on these considerations, EPA considered the studies by [Reynolds et al. \(1996\)](#), [Preller](#)  
29 [et al. \(1995\)](#), [Donham et al. \(2000\)](#), [Donham et al. \(1995\)](#), and [Heederik et al. \(1990\)](#) to be the  
30 methodologically strongest studies of this set. Because of the variety of exposures in the type of  
31 environment examined in these studies (including dust, endotoxin, mold, and disinfectant  
32 products) and the availability of sets of studies in settings with a lesser degree of co-exposures, this  
33 set of studies is considered to be supporting material.

#### 34 35 ***Considerations for evaluation of animal studies***

36 Relatively few repeat-dose toxicity studies of ammonia in experimental animals are  
37 available. Many of the available animal studies come from the older toxicological literature and are  
38 limited in terms of study design (e.g., small group sizes) and reporting of results. These studies  
39 were evaluated consistent with EPA principles and practices for evaluating study quality ([U.S. EPA,](#)  
40 [2005a, 1998b, 1996, 1994, 1991](#)); however, detailed documentation of the methodological features  
41 of the available animal studies was not necessary to convey the limitations of this body of ammonia

## ***Toxicological Review of Ammonia***

1 literature. The animal studies are summarized in detail in Appendix E, Section E.3. Essentially all  
2 the animal toxicology studies were included in this assessment. Any studies excluded from the  
3 hazard identification as uninformative are identified in Section 1.1, along with the basis for  
4 exclusion.

5 The references considered and cited in this document, including bibliographic information  
6 and abstracts, can be found on the Health and Environmental Research On-line (HERO) website<sup>3</sup>  
7 (<http://hero.epa.gov/ammonia>).

---

<sup>3</sup>HERO (Health and Environmental Research On-line) is a database of scientific studies and other references used to develop EPA's risk assessments aimed at understanding the health and environmental effects of pollutants and chemicals. It is developed and managed in EPA's Office of Research and Development (ORD) by the National Center for Environmental Assessment (NCEA). The database includes more than 300,000 scientific articles from the peer-reviewed literature. New studies are added continuously to HERO.

# 1. HAZARD IDENTIFICATION

## 1.1. SYNTHESIS OF EVIDENCE

### 1.1.1. Respiratory Effects

The respiratory system is the primary target of toxicity of inhaled ammonia in humans and experimental animals. Five cross-sectional occupational epidemiology studies in industrial settings ([Rahman et al., 2007](#); [Ali et al., 2001](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#); [Bhat and Ramaswamy, 1993](#); [Holness et al., 1989](#)) examined the association between inhaled ammonia and prevalence of respiratory symptoms or changes in lung function (Table 1-1). Another set of studies examined pulmonary function or asthma symptoms in relation to ammonia exposure in health care workers and domestic cleaners ([Arif and Delclos, 2012](#); [Dumas et al., 2012](#); [Lemiere et al., 2012](#); [Vizcaya et al., 2011](#); [Zock et al., 2007](#); [Medina-Ramón et al., 2006](#); [Medina-Ramón et al., 2005](#)) (Table 1-2). The association between ammonia exposure and respiratory effects indicated by these studies is also informed by studies of pulmonary function in livestock farmers, volunteer studies involving acute exposures to inhaled ammonia, and human case reports (see Supplemental Material, Appendix E, Section E.2), and in subchronic inhalation toxicity studies in various experimental animal species (Table 1-3). The evidence of respiratory effects in humans and experimental animals exposed to ammonia is summarized in an exposure-response array in Figure 1-1 at the end of this section.

#### **Respiratory Symptoms**

Respiratory symptoms (including cough, wheezing, and other asthma-related symptoms) were reported in two cross-sectional studies of industrial worker populations exposed to ammonia at levels greater than or equal to approximately 18 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ([Rahman et al., 2007](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#)) (Table 1-1). One of these studies also examined frequency of respiratory symptoms by cumulative ammonia concentration (CAC, mg/m<sup>3</sup>-years) and observed significantly higher relative risks (2.5–5.3) with higher CAC (>50 mg/m<sup>3</sup>-years) compared to those with a lower CAC (≤50 mg/m<sup>3</sup>-years) ([Ballal et al., 1998](#)). In three studies examining lower exposures settings ([Rahman et al., 2007](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#); [Holness et al., 1989](#)) (Table 1-1), no differences were observed in the prevalence of respiratory symptoms between ammonia-exposed workers and controls. Ammonia concentrations reported in these lower exposure settings included a mean ammonia concentration of 6.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup> and a high-exposure group defined as >8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup> in [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#), an exposure range of 0.2–7 mg/m<sup>3</sup> in “Factory B” of [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#), and a mean concentration of 4.9 mg/m<sup>3</sup> in [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#). The primary limitation noted in all of these studies was the potential under-ascertainment of effects inherent in the study of a long-term worker population (i.e., “healthy worker” effect) (see Literature Search Strategy | Study Selection and Evaluation section and Table D-2 in the Supplemental Information). Confounding by other workplace

1 exposures, although a potential concern, was unlikely to be a major limitation affecting the  
2 interpretation of the pattern of results seen in these studies, given the lack of nitrogen dioxide  
3 measurements above the detection limit in one study ([Rahman et al., 2007](#)) and the high level of  
4 control of exposures in another study ([Holness et al., 1989](#)).

5 Studies of health care workers or hospital workers ([Arif and Delclos, 2012](#); [Dumas et al.,  
6 2012](#)) (Table 1-2) provide evidence that exposure to ammonia as a cleaning or disinfectant product  
7 is associated with increased risk of asthma or asthma symptoms. Use of ammonia as a cleaning  
8 product in other settings has also been associated with asthma and respiratory symptoms ([Vizcaya  
9 et al., 2011](#); [Zock et al., 2007](#); [Medina-Ramón et al., 2005](#)) (Table 1-2). Occupational exposure to  
10 ammonia was associated with work-exacerbated asthma (compared to non-work related asthma)  
11 in a study at two occupational asthma specialty clinics by [Lemiere et al. \(2012\)](#) (Table 1-2). Each of  
12 six studies, from Europe, Canada, and the United States, observed elevated odds ratios, generally  
13 between 1.5 and 2.0, with varying degrees of precision. These studies were conducted using a  
14 variety of designs, including a prospective study ([Zock et al., 2007](#)) and a nested case-control study  
15 ([Medina-Ramón et al., 2005](#)). Criteria used to define current asthma or asthma symptoms were  
16 generally well defined and based on validated methods. A major limitation of this collection of  
17 studies is the lack of direct measures of ammonia exposure. Two of the studies included expert  
18 assessment of exposure (blinded to case status); expert assessment, improves reliance on self-  
19 reported exposure ([Dumas et al., 2012](#); [Lemiere et al., 2012](#)). Confounding by other cleaning  
20 products is an unlikely explanation for these results, as two of the studies noted only weak  
21 correlations between ammonia and other product use ([Zock et al., 2007](#); [Medina-Ramón et al.,  
22 2005](#)), and another study observed stronger associations with ammonia than with bleach ([Dumas  
23 et al., 2012](#)). All of the studies addressed smoking as a potential confounder.

24 Studies in swine and dairy farmers analyzing prevalence of respiratory symptoms  
25 (including cough, phlegm, wheezing, chest tightness, and eye, nasal, and throat irritation) in relation  
26 to ammonia exposure provided generally negative results ([Melbostad and Eduard, 2001](#); [Preller et  
27 al., 1995](#); [Zejda et al., 1994](#)) (Appendix E, Table E-7). Two other studies that measured ammonia,  
28 but did not present an analysis in relation to variability in ammonia levels, reported an increased  
29 prevalence of respiratory symptoms in pig farmers exposed to ammonia from animal waste  
30 ([Choudat et al., 1994](#); [Crook et al., 1991](#)) (Appendix E, Table E-8). In addition to ammonia, these  
31 studies also documented exposures to other compounds, such as airborne dust, endotoxin, mold,  
32 and disinfectants.

33 Reports of irritation and hyperventilation in volunteers acutely exposed to ammonia at  
34 concentrations ranging from 11 to 354 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for durations up to 4 hours under  
35 controlled exposure conditions ([Petrova et al., 2008](#); [Smeets et al., 2007](#); [Ihrig et al., 2006](#); [Verberk,  
36 1977](#); [Silverman et al., 1949](#)) provide support for ammonia as a respiratory irritant (Appendix E,  
37 Section E.2 and Table E-9). Two controlled-exposure studies report habituation to eye, nose, and  
38 throat irritation in volunteers after several weeks of ammonia exposure ([Ihrig et al., 2006](#);  
39 [Ferguson et al., 1977](#)). Numerous case reports document the acute respiratory effects of inhaled  
40 ammonia, ranging from mild symptoms (including nasal and throat irritation and perceived

1 tightness in the throat) to moderate effects (including pharyngitis, tachycardia, dyspnea, rapid and  
2 shallow breathing, cyanosis, transient bronchospasm, and rhonchi in the lungs) to severe effects  
3 (including burns of the nasal passages, soft palate, posterior pharyngeal wall, and larynx, upper  
4 airway obstruction, bronchospasm, persistent, productive cough, bilateral diffuse rales and rhonchi,  
5 mucous production, pulmonary edema, marked hypoxemia, and necrosis of the lung) (Appendix E,  
6 Section E.2).

7 Experimental studies in laboratory animals also provide consistent evidence that repeated  
8 exposure to ammonia can affect the respiratory system (Table 1-3 and Appendix E, Section E.3).  
9 The majority of available animal studies did not look at measures of respiratory irritation, in  
10 contrast to the majority of human studies, but rather examined histopathological changes of  
11 respiratory tract tissues. Histopathological changes in the nasal passages were observed in  
12 Sherman rats after 75 days of exposure to 106 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia and in F344 rats after 35 days of  
13 exposure to 177 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia, with respiratory and nasal epithelium thicknesses increased 3–4  
14 times that of normal ([Broderon et al., 1976](#)). Thickening of nasal and tracheal epithelium (50–  
15 100%) was also observed in pigs exposed to 71 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia continuously for 1–6 weeks ([Doig  
16 and Willoughby, 1971](#)). Nonspecific inflammatory changes (not further described) were reported  
17 in the lungs of Sprague-Dawley and Long-Evans rats continuously exposed to 127 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia  
18 for 90 days and rats and guinea pigs intermittently exposed to 770 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for 6 weeks;  
19 continuous exposure to 455 and 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia increased mortality in rats ([Coon et al.,  
20 1970](#)). Focal or diffuse interstitial pneumonitis was observed in all Princeton-derived guinea pigs,  
21 New Zealand white rabbits, beagle dogs, and squirrel monkeys exposed to 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia  
22 ([Coon et al., 1970](#)). Additionally, under these exposure conditions, dogs exhibited nasal discharge  
23 and other signs of irritation (marked eye irritation, heavy lacrimation). Nasal discharge was  
24 observed in 25% of rats exposed to 262 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for 90 days ([Coon et al., 1970](#)).

25 At lower concentrations, approximately 50 mg/m<sup>3</sup> and below, the majority of studies of  
26 inhaled ammonia did not identify respiratory effects in laboratory animals exposed to ammonia.  
27 No increase in the incidence of respiratory or other diseases common to young pigs was observed  
28 after continuous exposure to ammonia and inhalable dust at concentrations representative of those  
29 found in commercial pig farms ( $\leq 26$  mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia) for 5 weeks ([Done et al., 2005](#)). No gross or  
30 histopathological changes in the turbinates, trachea, and lungs of pigs were observed after  
31 continuous exposure to 35 or 53 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for up to 109 days ([Curtis et al., 1975](#)). No signs  
32 of toxicity in rats or dogs were observed after continuous exposure to 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for 114  
33 days or after intermittent exposure (8 hours/day) to 155 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for 6 weeks ([Coon et al.,  
34 1970](#)). Only one study reported respiratory effects at concentrations  $< 50$  mg/m<sup>3</sup> (i.e., lung  
35 congestion, edema, and hemorrhage in guinea pigs and mice exposed to 14 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for up  
36 to 42 days; [Anderson et al. \(1964\)](#)), but confidence in the findings from this study is limited by  
37 inadequate reporting and small numbers of animals tested.

38

1 ***Lung Function***

2 Decreased lung function in ammonia-exposed workers has been reported in three of the  
3 four studies examining this outcome measure ([Rahman et al., 2007](#); [Ali et al., 2001](#); [Holness et al.,  
4 1989](#)); the exception is the study by [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) (Table 1-1) in which no significant  
5 changes in lung function were observed in workers exposed to ammonia in an industrial setting  
6 with relatively low ammonia exposure levels (Table 1-1). These effects were observed in short-  
7 term scenarios (i.e., cross-work shift changes in lung function) in fertilizer factor workers (mean  
8 ammonia concentration of 18.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) compared with administrative staff controls ([Rahman et al.,  
9 2007](#)), and in longer-term scenarios, in workers with a cumulative exposure of >50 mg/m<sup>3</sup>-years  
10 when compared with workers with a lower cumulative exposure of ≤50 mg/m<sup>3</sup>-years ([Ali et al.,  
11 2001](#)). There were no decrements in the percent of predicted lung function values when comparing  
12 the total exposed group to a control group of office workers in this study ([Ali et al., 2001](#)), in the  
13 relatively low exposure scenario examined in [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) (mean ammonia concentration  
14 of 6.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup> and high-exposure group defined as >8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>), or in the low-exposure group  
15 (mean ammonia concentration of 4.9 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) in [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#). Another study of ammonia  
16 plant fertilizer workers reported statistically significant decreases in forced expiratory volume  
17 (FEV<sub>1</sub>) and peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR/minute) in workers compared to controls ([Bhat and  
18 Ramaswamy, 1993](#)); however, measurements of ammonia levels were not included in this study.  
19 As discussed previously in the summary of respiratory symptoms studies, the primary limitation  
20 within this set of studies is the potential under-ascertainment of effects in these studies of long-  
21 term worker populations.

22 One of the studies of domestic cleaning workers described in Table 1-2 included a measure  
23 of pulmonary function ([Medina-Ramón et al., 2006](#)). Ammonia use was associated with a decrease  
24 in peak expiratory flow (PEF) (-9.4 [95% CI, -17, -2.3]). A limitation of this study was the use of  
25 lung function measurements conducted by the participant; the reliability of this procedure has not  
26 been established.

27 Impaired respiratory function (e.g., decreased FEV<sub>1</sub> and forced vital capacity [FVC]) in  
28 livestock farmers was associated with ammonia exposure in five of the seven studies that included  
29 pulmonary function measures ([Monsó et al., 2004](#); [Donham et al., 2000](#); [Reynolds et al., 1996](#);  
30 [Donham et al., 1995](#); [Preller et al., 1995](#); [Zeida et al., 1994](#); [Heederik et al., 1990](#)) (Appendix E, Table  
31 E-7). EPA considered these studies to be the strongest with respect to methodology, based on  
32 considerations of exposure assessment and assessment of potential confounding (see Literature  
33 Search Strategy | Study Selection and Evaluation section).

34 Changes in lung function following acute exposure to ammonia have been observed in some,  
35 but not all, controlled exposure studies conducted in volunteers (Appendix E, Section E.2 and Table  
36 E-9). [Cole et al. \(1977\)](#) reported reduced lung function as measured by reduced expiratory minute  
37 volume and changes in exercise tidal volume in volunteers exposed for a half-day in a chamber at  
38 ammonia concentrations ≥106 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, but not at 71 mg/m<sup>3</sup>. Bronchoconstriction was reported in  
39 volunteers exposed to ammonia through a mouthpiece for 10 inhaled breaths of ammonia gas at a  
40 concentration of 60 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ([Douglas and Coe, 1987](#)); however, there were no bronchial symptoms

## ***Toxicological Review of Ammonia***

1 reported in volunteers exposed to ammonia in an exposure chamber at concentrations of up to 35  
2 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 10 minutes ([MacEwen et al., 1970](#)). Similarly, no changes in bronchial responsiveness or  
3 lung function (as measured by FVC and FEV<sub>1</sub>) were reported in healthy volunteers exposed to  
4 ammonia at concentrations up to 18 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 1.5 hours during exercise ([Sundblad et al., 2004](#)).  
5 There were no changes in lung function as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub> in 25 healthy volunteers and 15  
6 mild/moderate persistent asthmatic volunteers exposed to ammonia concentrations up to 354  
7 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for up to 2.5 hours ([Petrova et al., 2008](#)), or in 6 healthy volunteers and 8 mildly  
8 asthmatic volunteers exposed to 11–18 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for 30-minute sessions ([Sigurdarson et al.,  
9 2004](#)).

10 Lung function effects following ammonia exposure were not evaluated in the available  
11 animal studies.

12  
13

1  
2

**Table 1-1. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effects in humans following inhalation exposure in industrial settings**

Study design and reference	Results																																				
<b>Respiratory symptoms</b>																																					
<p><a href="#">Rahman et al. (2007)</a> (Bangladesh) Urea fertilizer factory worker (all men); 24 ammonia plant workers, 64 urea plant workers, and 25 controls (staff from administration building). Mean employment duration: 16 years <b>Exposure:</b> Personal samples (2 methods<sup>a</sup>; correlation = 0.80) Low-exposure group (ammonia plant), mean: 6.9 ppm (4.9 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); range: 2.8–11.1 ppm (2–8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) High-exposure group (urea plant), mean: 26.1 ppm (18.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); range: 13.4–43.5 ppm (9–31 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) <b>Outcome:</b> Respiratory symptoms (5 point scale for severity over last shift), based on Optimal Symptom Score Questionnaire</p>	<p>Percentage of workers reporting symptoms (<i>p</i>-value):</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Controls (n = 25)</th> <th>Low exposed (n = 24) (<i>p</i>-value)<sup>1</sup></th> <th>High exposed (n = 64) (<i>p</i>-value)<sup>2</sup></th> <th>(<i>p</i>-value)<sup>3</sup></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Cough</td> <td>8</td> <td>17 (0.42)</td> <td>28 (0.05)</td> <td>(0.41)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Chest tightness</td> <td>8</td> <td>17 (0.42)</td> <td>33 (0.02)</td> <td>(0.19)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Stuffy nose</td> <td>4</td> <td>12 (0.35)</td> <td>16 (0.17)</td> <td>(1.0)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Runny nose</td> <td>4</td> <td>4 (1.0)</td> <td>16 (0.17)</td> <td>(0.28)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Sneeze</td> <td>8</td> <td>0 (0.49)</td> <td>22 (0.22)</td> <td>(0.01)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><sup>1</sup><i>p</i>-value for ammonia plant compared to control <sup>2</sup><i>p</i>-value for urea plant compared to control <sup>3</sup><i>p</i>-value for urea plant compared to ammonia plant</p>		Controls (n = 25)	Low exposed (n = 24) ( <i>p</i> -value) <sup>1</sup>	High exposed (n = 64) ( <i>p</i> -value) <sup>2</sup>	( <i>p</i> -value) <sup>3</sup>	Cough	8	17 (0.42)	28 (0.05)	(0.41)	Chest tightness	8	17 (0.42)	33 (0.02)	(0.19)	Stuffy nose	4	12 (0.35)	16 (0.17)	(1.0)	Runny nose	4	4 (1.0)	16 (0.17)	(0.28)	Sneeze	8	0 (0.49)	22 (0.22)	(0.01)						
	Controls (n = 25)	Low exposed (n = 24) ( <i>p</i> -value) <sup>1</sup>	High exposed (n = 64) ( <i>p</i> -value) <sup>2</sup>	( <i>p</i> -value) <sup>3</sup>																																	
Cough	8	17 (0.42)	28 (0.05)	(0.41)																																	
Chest tightness	8	17 (0.42)	33 (0.02)	(0.19)																																	
Stuffy nose	4	12 (0.35)	16 (0.17)	(1.0)																																	
Runny nose	4	4 (1.0)	16 (0.17)	(0.28)																																	
Sneeze	8	0 (0.49)	22 (0.22)	(0.01)																																	
<p><a href="#">Ballal et al. (1998)</a> (Saudi Arabia) Urea fertilizer factory workers (two factories) (all men); 161 exposed workers and 355 unexposed controls<sup>b</sup>. Mean employment duration: 51.8 months (exposed workers) and 73.1 months (controls) <b>Exposure:</b> Area monitors (3 sets in each work section taken at least 3 months apart, mean 16 measures per set). Factory A (high-exposure factory): 2–130<sup>1</sup> mg/m<sup>3</sup> (mid-point = 66 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); geometric mean &lt;18 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, except for urea packaging and store areas (geometric means = 18.6 and 115 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, respectively) Factory B (low-exposure factory): 0.02–7 mg/m<sup>3</sup>; geometric mean &lt;18 mg/m<sup>3</sup> Cumulative exposure calculated based on exposure and duration; dichotomized to high and low at 50 mg/m<sup>3</sup>-years <b>Outcome:</b> Respiratory symptoms based on British Medical Research Council questionnaire</p> <p><sup>1</sup>The ammonia concentration range in Factory A is better represented as 2–27.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>. This range excludes the employees in the urea store (n = 6; range of ammonia concentrations = 90–130.4 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) who were required to wear full protective clothing, thus minimizing potential exposure. Number of workers in Factory A excluding urea store workers = 78.</p>	<p>Relative risk (95% CI), compared with controls</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Factory B<sup>2</sup> (0.02–7 mg/m<sup>3</sup>; n = 77)</th> <th>Factory A<sup>2</sup> (2–27.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>; n = 78)<sup>1</sup></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Cough</td> <td>No cases</td> <td>2.0 (0.38, 10.4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Phlegm</td> <td>No cases</td> <td>2.0 (0.38, 10.4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wheezing</td> <td>0.97 (0.21, 4.5)</td> <td>3.4 (1.2, 9.5)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dyspnea</td> <td>0.45 (0.11, 1.9)</td> <td>1.8 (0.81, 4.2)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Relative risk (95% CI), compared with lower exposure setting (≤18 mg/m<sup>3</sup> [n = 138] or ≤50 mg/m<sup>3</sup>-years [n = 130])</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>&gt;18 mg/m<sup>3</sup> (n = 17)</th> <th>Cumulative &gt;50 mg/m<sup>3</sup>-years (n = 30)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Cough</td> <td>3.5 (1.8, 6.6)</td> <td>2.8 (1.6, 5.0)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Phlegm</td> <td>3.8 (2.0, 7.1)</td> <td>3.0 (1.7, 5.5)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wheezing</td> <td>5.0 (2.4, 10.6)</td> <td>5.2 (2.9, 9.5)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dyspnea</td> <td>4.6 (2.4, 8.8)</td> <td>2.6 (1.3, 5.4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Asthma</td> <td>4.3 (2.1, 9.0)</td> <td>2.4 (1.1, 5.4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Chronic bronchitis</td> <td>2.3 (0.31, 17)</td> <td>5.3 (1.7, 16)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><sup>2</sup>Factory-specific analyses stratified by smoking status; results presented here are for non-smokers. Similar patterns seen in other smoking categories.</p> <p>Approximate 1.3–1.5 relative risk (<i>p</i> &lt; 0.05) per unit increase in ammonia concentration for cough, phlegm, wheezing, and asthma, adjusting for duration of work, cumulative exposure, smoking, and age.</p>		Factory B <sup>2</sup> (0.02–7 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ; n = 77)	Factory A <sup>2</sup> (2–27.1 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ; n = 78) <sup>1</sup>	Cough	No cases	2.0 (0.38, 10.4)	Phlegm	No cases	2.0 (0.38, 10.4)	Wheezing	0.97 (0.21, 4.5)	3.4 (1.2, 9.5)	Dyspnea	0.45 (0.11, 1.9)	1.8 (0.81, 4.2)		>18 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (n = 17)	Cumulative >50 mg/m <sup>3</sup> -years (n = 30)	Cough	3.5 (1.8, 6.6)	2.8 (1.6, 5.0)	Phlegm	3.8 (2.0, 7.1)	3.0 (1.7, 5.5)	Wheezing	5.0 (2.4, 10.6)	5.2 (2.9, 9.5)	Dyspnea	4.6 (2.4, 8.8)	2.6 (1.3, 5.4)	Asthma	4.3 (2.1, 9.0)	2.4 (1.1, 5.4)	Chronic bronchitis	2.3 (0.31, 17)	5.3 (1.7, 16)
	Factory B <sup>2</sup> (0.02–7 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ; n = 77)	Factory A <sup>2</sup> (2–27.1 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ; n = 78) <sup>1</sup>																																			
Cough	No cases	2.0 (0.38, 10.4)																																			
Phlegm	No cases	2.0 (0.38, 10.4)																																			
Wheezing	0.97 (0.21, 4.5)	3.4 (1.2, 9.5)																																			
Dyspnea	0.45 (0.11, 1.9)	1.8 (0.81, 4.2)																																			
	>18 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (n = 17)	Cumulative >50 mg/m <sup>3</sup> -years (n = 30)																																			
Cough	3.5 (1.8, 6.6)	2.8 (1.6, 5.0)																																			
Phlegm	3.8 (2.0, 7.1)	3.0 (1.7, 5.5)																																			
Wheezing	5.0 (2.4, 10.6)	5.2 (2.9, 9.5)																																			
Dyspnea	4.6 (2.4, 8.8)	2.6 (1.3, 5.4)																																			
Asthma	4.3 (2.1, 9.0)	2.4 (1.1, 5.4)																																			
Chronic bronchitis	2.3 (0.31, 17)	5.3 (1.7, 16)																																			

**Table 1-1. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effects in humans following inhalation exposure in industrial settings**

Study design and reference	Results																																										
<p><b>Holness et al. (1989)</b> (Canada) Soda ash plant workers (all men); 58 exposed workers and 31 controls (from stores and office areas of plant)<sup>c</sup>. Average exposure: 12.2 years <b>Exposure:</b> Personal samples, one work-shift per person, mean 8.4 hours Low: &lt;6.25 ppm (&lt;4.4 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); n = 34 Medium: 6.25–12.5 ppm (4.4–8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); n = 12 High: &gt;12.5 ppm (&gt;8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); n = 12 All exposed workers (mean): 6.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup> <b>Outcome:</b> Respiratory symptoms based on American Thoracic Society questionnaire</p>	<p>Percentage of workers reporting symptoms (%):</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Control (n = 31)</th> <th>Exposed (n = 58)</th> <th>p-value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Cough</td> <td>10</td> <td>16</td> <td>0.53</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Sputum</td> <td>16</td> <td>22</td> <td>0.98</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bronchitis</td> <td>19</td> <td>22</td> <td>0.69</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wheeze</td> <td>10</td> <td>10</td> <td>0.91</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Chest tightness</td> <td>6</td> <td>3</td> <td>0.62</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dyspnea (shortness of breath)</td> <td>13</td> <td>7</td> <td>0.05</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Chest pain</td> <td>6</td> <td>2</td> <td>0.16</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Rhinitis (nasal complaints)</td> <td>19</td> <td>10</td> <td>0.12</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Throat irritation</td> <td>3</td> <td>7</td> <td>0.53</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>No increased risk seen in analyses stratified by exposure group.</p>				Control (n = 31)	Exposed (n = 58)	p-value	Cough	10	16	0.53	Sputum	16	22	0.98	Bronchitis	19	22	0.69	Wheeze	10	10	0.91	Chest tightness	6	3	0.62	Dyspnea (shortness of breath)	13	7	0.05	Chest pain	6	2	0.16	Rhinitis (nasal complaints)	19	10	0.12	Throat irritation	3	7	0.53
	Control (n = 31)	Exposed (n = 58)	p-value																																								
Cough	10	16	0.53																																								
Sputum	16	22	0.98																																								
Bronchitis	19	22	0.69																																								
Wheeze	10	10	0.91																																								
Chest tightness	6	3	0.62																																								
Dyspnea (shortness of breath)	13	7	0.05																																								
Chest pain	6	2	0.16																																								
Rhinitis (nasal complaints)	19	10	0.12																																								
Throat irritation	3	7	0.53																																								
<b>Lung function</b>																																											
<p><b>Rahman et al. (2007)</b> (Bangladesh) Urea fertilizer factory worker (all men); 24 ammonia plant workers, 64 urea plant workers, and 25 controls (staff from administration building). Mean employment duration: 16 years <b>Exposure:</b> Personal samples (2 methods<sup>a</sup>; correlation = 0.80) Low-exposure group (ammonia plant), mean: 6.9 ppm (4.9 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); range: 2.8–11.1 ppm (2–8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) High-exposure group (urea plant), mean: 26.1 ppm (18.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); range: 13.4–43.5 ppm (9–31 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) <b>Outcome:</b> Lung function (standard spirometry)</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Pre-shift</th> <th>Post-shift</th> <th>p-value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="4">Ammonia plant (low-exposure group, 4.9 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); n = 24 ammonia plant workers</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FVC</td> <td>3.308</td> <td>3.332</td> <td>0.67</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FEV<sub>1</sub></td> <td>2.627</td> <td>2.705</td> <td>0.24</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PEFR</td> <td>8.081</td> <td>8.313</td> <td>0.22</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4">Urea plant (high-exposure group, 18.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); n = 64 urea plant workers</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FVC</td> <td>3.362</td> <td>3.258</td> <td>0.01</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FEV<sub>1</sub></td> <td>2.701</td> <td>2.646</td> <td>0.05</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PEFR</td> <td>7.805</td> <td>7.810</td> <td>0.97</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>p-value reflects the comparison of pre- and post-shift values.</p>				Pre-shift	Post-shift	p-value	Ammonia plant (low-exposure group, 4.9 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ); n = 24 ammonia plant workers				FVC	3.308	3.332	0.67	FEV <sub>1</sub>	2.627	2.705	0.24	PEFR	8.081	8.313	0.22	Urea plant (high-exposure group, 18.5 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ); n = 64 urea plant workers				FVC	3.362	3.258	0.01	FEV <sub>1</sub>	2.701	2.646	0.05	PEFR	7.805	7.810	0.97				
	Pre-shift	Post-shift	p-value																																								
Ammonia plant (low-exposure group, 4.9 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ); n = 24 ammonia plant workers																																											
FVC	3.308	3.332	0.67																																								
FEV <sub>1</sub>	2.627	2.705	0.24																																								
PEFR	8.081	8.313	0.22																																								
Urea plant (high-exposure group, 18.5 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ); n = 64 urea plant workers																																											
FVC	3.362	3.258	0.01																																								
FEV <sub>1</sub>	2.701	2.646	0.05																																								
PEFR	7.805	7.810	0.97																																								
<p><b>Ali et al. (2001)</b> (Saudi Arabia) Urea fertilizer factory workers (all men)—(additional study of “Factory A” in <a href="#">Ballal et al. (1998)</a>); 73 exposed workers and 348 unexposed controls. Mean employment duration: not reported <b>Exposure:</b> 4-hour measurements. Cumulative exposure calculated based on exposure and duration; dichotomized to high and low at 50 mg/m<sup>3</sup>-years <b>Outcome:</b> Lung function (standard spirometry; morning measurement)</p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Control (n = 348)</th> <th>Exposed (n = 73)</th> <th>p-value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEV<sub>1</sub>% predicted</td> <td>96.6</td> <td>98.1</td> <td>NS</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FVC% predicted</td> <td>101.0</td> <td>105.6</td> <td>0.002</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FEV<sub>1</sub>/FVC%</td> <td>83.0</td> <td>84.2</td> <td>NS</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4">Stratified by cumulative exposure</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>≤50 mg/m<sup>3</sup>-y (n = 45)</td> <td>&gt;50 mg/m<sup>3</sup>-y (n = 28)</td> <td>p-value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FVC<sub>1</sub>% predicted</td> <td>100.7</td> <td>93.4</td> <td>0.006</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FVC% predicted</td> <td>105.6</td> <td>100.2</td> <td>0.03</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FEV<sub>1</sub>/FVC%</td> <td>84.7</td> <td>83.4</td> <td>NS</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>NS = not significant (p-values not provided by study authors)</p>				Control (n = 348)	Exposed (n = 73)	p-value	FEV <sub>1</sub> % predicted	96.6	98.1	NS	FVC% predicted	101.0	105.6	0.002	FEV <sub>1</sub> /FVC%	83.0	84.2	NS	Stratified by cumulative exposure					≤50 mg/m <sup>3</sup> -y (n = 45)	>50 mg/m <sup>3</sup> -y (n = 28)	p-value	FVC <sub>1</sub> % predicted	100.7	93.4	0.006	FVC% predicted	105.6	100.2	0.03	FEV <sub>1</sub> /FVC%	84.7	83.4	NS				
	Control (n = 348)	Exposed (n = 73)	p-value																																								
FEV <sub>1</sub> % predicted	96.6	98.1	NS																																								
FVC% predicted	101.0	105.6	0.002																																								
FEV <sub>1</sub> /FVC%	83.0	84.2	NS																																								
Stratified by cumulative exposure																																											
	≤50 mg/m <sup>3</sup> -y (n = 45)	>50 mg/m <sup>3</sup> -y (n = 28)	p-value																																								
FVC <sub>1</sub> % predicted	100.7	93.4	0.006																																								
FVC% predicted	105.6	100.2	0.03																																								
FEV <sub>1</sub> /FVC%	84.7	83.4	NS																																								

**Table 1-1. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effects in humans following inhalation exposure in industrial settings**

Study design and reference	Results					
<p><a href="#">Bhat and Ramaswamy (1993)</a> (India) Fertilizer chemical plant workers; 30 diammonium phosphate (DAP) plant workers, 30 urea plant workers, 31 ammonia plant workers, and 68 controls (people with comparable body surface area chosen from the same socio-economic status and sex as exposed workers) <b>Exposure:</b> Measurements not reported; duration dichotomized as ≤10 and &gt;10 years <b>Outcome:</b> Lung function (standard spirometry)</p>		Controls (n = 68)	DAP plant (n = 30)	Urea plant (n = 30)	Ammonia plant (n = 31)	
	FVC	3.4 ± 0.21	2.5 ± 0.06*	3.3 ± 0.11	3.2 ± 0.07	
	FEV <sub>1</sub>	2.8 ± 0.10	2.1 ± 0.08*	2.7 ± 0.10	2.5 ± 0.1*	
	PEFR	383 ± 7.6	228 ± 18*	307 ± 19*	314 ± 20*	
	*p < 0.05					
<p><a href="#">Holness et al. (1989)</a> (Canada) Soda ash plant workers (all men); 58 exposed workers and 31 controls (from stores and office areas of plant)<sup>c</sup>. Average exposure: 12.2 years <b>Exposure:</b> Personal samples, one work-shift per person, mean 8.4 hours Low: &lt;6.25 ppm (&lt;4.4 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); n = 34 Medium: 6.25–12.5 ppm (4.4–8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); n = 12 High: &gt;12.5 ppm (&gt;8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>); n = 12 All exposed workers (mean): 6.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup> <b>Outcome:</b> Lung function (standard spirometry; beginning and end of shift, at least two test days per worker)</p>		Control (n = 31)	Exposed (n = 58)		p-value	
	Lung function (% predicted values):					
	FVC		98.6	96.8		0.094
	FEV <sub>1</sub>		95.1	94.1		0.35
	FEV <sub>1</sub> /FVC		96.5	97.1		0.48
	Change in lung function over work shift:					
	FVC day1		-0.9	-0.8		0.99
	day 2		+0.1	-0.0		0.84
	FEV <sub>1</sub> day 1		-0.2	-0.2		0.94
	day 2		+0.5	+0.7		0.86

FEV<sub>1</sub> = forced expiratory volume in 1 second; FVC = forced vital capacity; PEFR = peak expiratory flow rate.

<sup>a</sup>Exposure concentrations were determined by both the Dräger tube and Dräger PAC III methods. Using the Dräger tube method, concentrations of ammonia in the ammonia and urea plants were 17.7 and 88.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, respectively; using the Dräger PAC III method, ammonia concentrations were 4.9 and 18.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, respectively ([Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#)). The study authors observed that their measurements indicated only relative differences in exposures between workers and production areas, and that the validity of the exposure measures could not be evaluated based on their results. Based on communication with technical support at Dräger Safety Inc (telephone conversations and e-mails dated June 22, 2010, from Michael Yanosky, Dräger Safety Inc., Technical Support Detection Products to Amber Bacom, SRC, Inc., contractor to NCEA, ORD, U.S. EPA), EPA considered the PAC III instrument to be a more sensitive monitoring technology than the Dräger tubes. Therefore, higher confidence is attributed to the PAC III air measurements of ammonia for the [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#) study.

<sup>b</sup>The process of fertilizer production involved synthesis of ammonia from natural gas, followed by reaction of the ammonia and carbon dioxide to form ammonium carbamide, which was then converted to urea.

<sup>c</sup>At this plant, ammonia, carbon dioxide, and water were the reactants used to form ammonium bicarbonate, which in turn was reacted with salt to produce sodium bicarbonate and subsequently processed to form sodium carbonate. Ammonia and carbon dioxide were recovered in the process and reused.

1  
2

**Table 1-2. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effect in humans following inhalation exposure in cleaning settings**

Study design and reference	Results
<b>Asthma or asthma symptoms</b>	
<p><a href="#">Dumas et al. (2012)</a> (France) Hybrid design, hospital workers, drawn from population-based case-control study; 179 hospital workers (136 women), 333 other workers (545 women). <b>Exposure:</b> Asthma-specific job exposure matrix plus + expert review (blinded), ever exposed, 18 specific products, based on all jobs held at least 3 months; ammonia prevalence 23% in female hospital workers <b>Outcome:</b> Current asthma: Asthma attack, respiratory symptoms or asthma treatment in the last 12 months (based on standardized questionnaire)</p>	<p>Odds ratio (95% CI), current asthma Women: 3.05 (1.19, 7.82) Men: no associations with any specific products (prevalence low) Adjusted for age and smoking, and accounting for familial dependence (due to sampling of cases and first degree relatives)</p>
<p><a href="#">Arif and Delclos (2012)</a> (United States, Texas) Population survey of 3,650 health care workers (physicians, nurses, respiratory therapists, occupational therapists), (total n = 5,600, response rate 66%) <b>Exposure:</b> Structured questionnaire—frequency of use of products for longest job held; ever contact with list of 28 products; ammonia prevalence 23% <b>Outcome:</b> Structured questionnaire</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Work-related asthma symptoms: wheezing/whistling at work or shortness of breath at works that gets better away from work or worse at work</li> <li>• Work-exacerbated asthma: onset before began work</li> <li>• Occupational asthma: onset after began work)</li> </ul>	<p>Odds ratio (95% CI) [n cases] Work-related asthma symptoms [n = 132] 2.45 (1.28, 4.69) Work-exacerbated asthma [n = 41] 1.58 (0.56, 4.43) Occupational asthma [n = 33] 1.86 (0.49, 7.13) Adjusted for age, sex, race/ethnicity, body mass index, seniority, atopy, and smoking status</p>
<p><a href="#">Lemiere et al. (2012)</a> (Quebec, Canada) Case-control study, workers seen at two tertiary care centers specializing in occupational asthma. Asthma (defined below) based on reversible airflow limitation or airway hyper-responsiveness tests; referent group = non-work related asthma (NWRA) seen at same clinics but symptoms did not worsen at work (n = 33). <b>Exposure:</b> Structured interview focusing on last/current job, combined with expert review (blinded); ammonia prevalence 19/153 = 12% <b>Outcome:</b> Diagnoses made based on reference tests</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Occupational asthma if specific inhalation challenge test was positive</li> <li>• Work-exacerbated asthma if specific inhalation test was negative but symptoms worsened at work</li> </ul>	<p>Odds ratio (95% CI) [n cases] Work exacerbation [n = 53] 8.4 (1.1, 371.7) Occupational asthma [n = 67] 3.7 (0.4, 173.4) Age, smoking, occupational exposure to heat, cold, humidity, dryness, and physical strain assessed as confounders. [Wide confidence intervals reflect sparseness in referent group, with only 1 of the 33 classified as exposed to ammonia]</p>

**Table 1-2. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effect in humans following inhalation exposure in cleaning settings**

Study design and reference	Results
<p><a href="#">Vizcaya et al. (2011)</a> (Spain)                      Survey of cleaning service workers (n = 917) from 37 businesses (19% response rate to questionnaire distributed through the employers); 761 current cleaners, 86 former cleaners, 70 never cleaners; referent group = never cleaners and current cleaners who have not used any of the specified cleaning products in last year (n = 161)  <b>Exposure:</b> Structured questionnaire, use of cleaning tasks and 12 products; ammonia prevalence 66%  <b>Outcome:</b> Structured questionnaire</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Current asthma: in past 12 months, woken by an attack of shortness of breath, had an attack of asthma or currently taking any asthma medications (including inhalers, aerosols or tablets)</li> <li>• Asthma score: Sum of “yes” answers to 5 symptoms in last 12 months (wheeze with breathlessness, woken up with chest tightness, attack of shortness of breath at rest, attack of shortness of breath after exercise, woken by attack of shortness of breath)</li> </ul>	<p>Odds ratio (95% CI) (among current cleaners) [n]                      Current asthma 1.4 (0.6, 3.2) [81]                      Wheeze without having a cold 2.1 (0.9, 4.7) [83]                      Chronic cough 1.6 (0.8, 3.3) [95]</p> <p>Asthma score 1.6 (1.0, 2.5)                      [mean 0.59, SD 1.12]                      Adjusted for age, country of birth (Spanish versus non-Spanish), sex, and smoking status</p>
<p><a href="#">Zock et al. (2007)</a> (Europe, 22 sites)                      Longitudinal study, n = 3,503, 9-year follow-up of European Community Respiratory Health Survey, population-based sample, ages 20-44 years. Excluded 764 individuals with asthma at baseline; limited to individuals reporting doing the cleaning or washing in their home.  <b>Exposure:</b> Structured interview at follow-up; frequency of use of 15 products  <b>Outcome:</b> Structured interview at follow-up</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New onset (since baseline survey) current asthma, defined by asthma attack or nocturnal shortness of breath in the past 12 months or current use of medication for asthma</li> <li>• Current wheeze defined as wheezing or whistling in the chest in last 12 months when not having a cold</li> <li>• New onset physician-diagnosed asthma, asthma defined as above with confirmation by a physician and information on age or date of first attack</li> </ul>	<p>Odds ratio (95% CI) [n]                      Current asthma 1.4 (0.87, 2.23) [199]                      Current wheeze 1.3 (0.81, 2.13) [226]                      Physician-diagnosed asthma 0.92 (0.33, 2.59) [71]</p> <p>Adjusted for sex, age, smoking, employment in a cleaning job during follow-up, and study center; heterogeneity by center also assessed. Correlations among products generally weak (Spearman rho &lt; 0.3)</p>

**Table 1-2. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effect in humans following inhalation exposure in cleaning settings**

Study design and reference	Results																						
<p><a href="#">Medina-Ramón et al. (2005)</a> (Spain)                      Nested case-control, cleaning workers; case (n = 40; 74% participation rate) based on asthma and/or bronchitis at both assessments. Controls (n = 155, 69% participation rate)—no history of respiratory symptoms in preceding year and no asthma at either assessment.  <b>Exposure:</b> Structured interview; frequency of use of 22 products; ammonia prevalence 16% undiluted, 56% diluted  <b>Outcome:</b> Asthma: asthma attack or being woken by attack or shortness of breath in past 12 months; Chronic bronchitis: regular cough or regular bringing up phlegm for at least 3 months each year</p>	<p>Odds ratio (95% CI) (unadjusted), ≥12 compared with &lt;12 times per year                      Undiluted 3.1 (1.2, 8.0)                      Diluted 0.8 (0.4, 1.7)</p>																						
<b><i>Pulmonary function and respiratory symptoms</i></b>																							
<p><a href="#">Medina-Ramón et al. (2006)</a> (Spain)                      Panel study, sample selected from participants in nested case-control study by <a href="#">Medina-Ramón et al. (2005)</a>. Current asthma symptoms or chronic bronchitis in 2000–2001 survey; n = 51 of 80 (64%); 8 excluded for possible recording errors, outliers, learning effects  <b>Exposure:</b> Daily diary of use of products  <b>Outcome:</b> Respiratory symptoms based on 2-week daily diary (7 symptoms, 5 point intensity scale); summed score for upper respiratory symptoms (blocked nose, throat irritation, watery eyes) and lower respiratory symptoms (chest tightness, wheezing, shortness of breath, and cough); PEF measured with mini-Wright peak flow meter (with training and written instructions); measured morning, lunchtime, night (3 measurements each; highest recorded)</p>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 40%;"></th> <th style="width: 30%; text-align: center;">Diluted and undiluted</th> <th style="width: 30%; text-align: center;">Diluted only</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: center;">OR (95% CI)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Upper respiratory symptoms</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1.8 (0.7, 4.9)</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1.3 (0.3, 5.0)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lower respiratory symptoms</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1.6 (0.6, 4.4)</td> <td style="text-align: center;">3.0 (1.0, 9.1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: center;">Beta (95% CI)</th> </tr> <tr> <td>PEF at night</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-9.4 (-17, -2.3)</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-10.3 (-18, -2.7)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PEF, following morning</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-1.2 (-8.5, 6.2)</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-2.9 (-11, 6.2)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Adjusted for respiratory infection, use of maintenance medication, and age; daily number of cigarettes smoked, years of employment in domestic cleaning, and/or weekly working hours in domestic cleaning also assessed as potential confounders</p>			Diluted and undiluted	Diluted only		OR (95% CI)		Upper respiratory symptoms	1.8 (0.7, 4.9)	1.3 (0.3, 5.0)	Lower respiratory symptoms	1.6 (0.6, 4.4)	3.0 (1.0, 9.1)		Beta (95% CI)		PEF at night	-9.4 (-17, -2.3)	-10.3 (-18, -2.7)	PEF, following morning	-1.2 (-8.5, 6.2)	-2.9 (-11, 6.2)
	Diluted and undiluted	Diluted only																					
	OR (95% CI)																						
Upper respiratory symptoms	1.8 (0.7, 4.9)	1.3 (0.3, 5.0)																					
Lower respiratory symptoms	1.6 (0.6, 4.4)	3.0 (1.0, 9.1)																					
	Beta (95% CI)																						
PEF at night	-9.4 (-17, -2.3)	-10.3 (-18, -2.7)																					
PEF, following morning	-1.2 (-8.5, 6.2)	-2.9 (-11, 6.2)																					

1

**Table 1-3. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effects in animals**

Study design and reference	Results
<b>Effects on the lungs</b>	
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a> Sprague-Dawley and Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group Squirrel monkey (<i>Saimiri sciureus</i>); male; 3/group Beagle dog; male; 2/group 0, 155, or 770 mg/m<sup>3</sup> 8 hrs/d, 5 d/wk for 6 wks</p>	<p>Gross necropsies were normal; focal pneumonitis in one of three monkeys at 155 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.  Nonspecific lung inflammation observed in guinea pigs and rats, but not in other species, at 770 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a> New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group Squirrel monkey (<i>S. sciureus</i>); male; 3/group Beagle dog; male; 2/group 0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	<p>Focal or diffuse interstitial pneumonitis in all animals. Calcification of bronchial epithelium observed in several animals. Hemorrhagic lung lesion in one of two dogs; moderate lung congestion in two of three rabbits.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a> Sprague-Dawley or Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group 0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 127, 262 or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d or 455 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 65 d</p>	<p>Dyspnea (mild) at 455 mg/m<sup>3</sup>. Focal or diffuse interstitial pneumonitis in all animals, and calcification of bronchial epithelium observed in several animals at 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a,b</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Anderson et al. (1964)</a> Swiss albino mouse; male and female; 4/group 0 or 20 ppm (0 or 14 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 7–42 d</p>	<p>Lung congestion, edema, and hemorrhage observed at 14 mg/m<sup>3</sup> after 42 d.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Anderson et al. (1964)</a> Guinea pig (strain not specified); male and female; 2/group 0 or 20 ppm (0 or 14 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 7–42 d or 50 ppm (35 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 42 d</p>	<p>Lung congestion, edema, and hemorrhage observed at 14 and 35 mg/m<sup>3</sup> after 42 d.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Done et al. (2005)</a> Pig (several breeds); sex not specified; 24/group 0, 0.6, 10, 18.8, or 37 ppm (0, 0.4, 7, 13.3, or 26 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) and 1.2, 2.7, 5.1, or 9.9 mg/m<sup>3</sup> inhalable dust for 5 wks (Exposure to ammonia and inhalable dust at concentrations commonly found at pig farms)</p>	<p>No increase in the incidence of respiratory or other diseases.</p>
<p><a href="#">Curtis et al. (1975)</a> Pig (crossbred); sex not specified; 4–8/group 0, 50, or 75 ppm (0, 35, or 53 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 109 d)</p>	<p>Turbinates, trachea, and lungs of all pigs were classified as normal.</p>
<b>Effects on the upper respiratory tract</b>	
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a> Sprague-Dawley and Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group Squirrel monkey (<i>S. sciureus</i>); male; 3/group Beagle dog; male; 2/group 0, 155, or 770 mg/m<sup>3</sup> 8 hrs/d, 5 d/wk for 6 wks</p>	<p>Dyspnea in rats and dogs exposed to 770 mg/m<sup>3</sup> during wk 1 only; no indication of irritation after wk 1; nasal tissues not examined for gross or histopathologic changes.</p>
<p><a href="#">Broderson et al. (1976)<sup>c</sup></a> Sherman rat; 5/sex/group 10 or 150 ppm (7 or 106 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) from bedding for 75 d</p>	<p>↑ thickness of the nasal epithelium (3–4 times) and nasal lesions at 106 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a</sup></p>

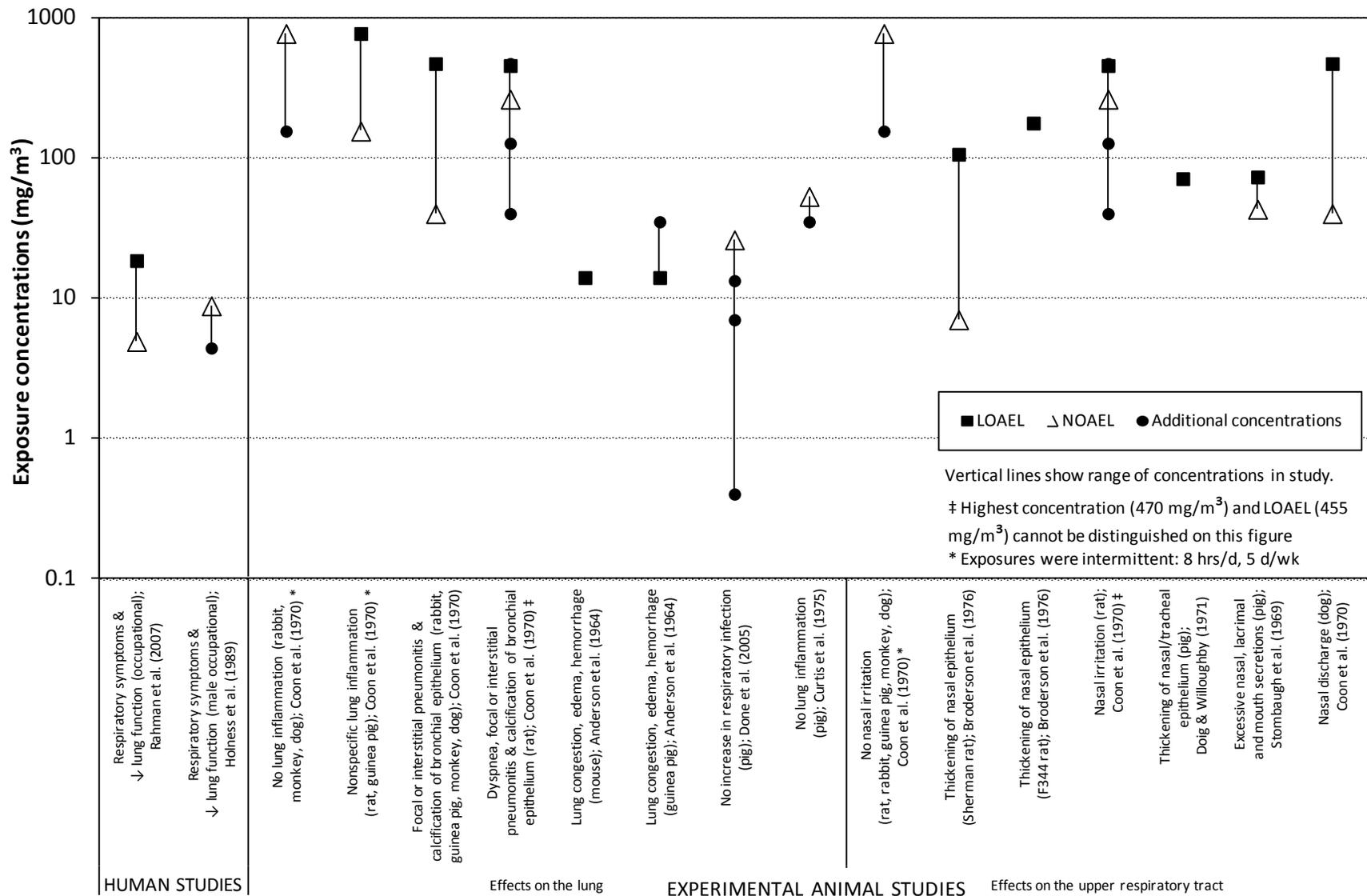
**Table 1-3. Evidence pertaining to respiratory effects in animals**

Study design and reference	Results
<p><a href="#">Broderson et al. (1976)</a><sup>c</sup> F344 rat; 6/sex/group 0 or 250 ppm (0 or 177 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) in an inhalation chamber for 35 d</p>	<p>↑ thickness of the nasal epithelium (3–4 times) and nasal lesions at 177 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a> Sprague-Dawley or Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group 0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 127, 262, or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d or 455 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 65 d</p>	<p>Nasal irritation in all animals at 455 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a,b</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Gaafar et al. (1992)</a> White albino mouse; male; 50 Ammonia vapor of 0 or 12% ammonia solution for 15 min/d, 6 d/wk, for 8 wks</p>	<p>Histological changes in the nasal mucosa.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Doig and Willoughby (1971)</a> Yorkshire-Landrace pig; sex not specified; 6/group 0 or 100 ppm (0 or 71 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 6 wks</p>	<p>↑ thickness of nasal and tracheal epithelium (50–100% increase).<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Stombaugh et al. (1969)</a> Duroc pig; both sexes; 9/group 12, 61, 103, 145 ppm (8, 43, 73, or 103 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 5 wks</p>	<p>Excessive nasal, lacrimal, and mouth secretions and ↑ frequency of cough at 73 and 103 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a> Beagle dog; male; 2/group 0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	<p>Nasal discharge at 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a</sup></p>

<sup>a</sup>Incidence data not provided.

<sup>b</sup>Exposure to 455 and 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia increased mortality in rats.

<sup>c</sup>The [Broderson et al. \(1976\)](#) paper includes a number of experiments in rats designed to examine whether ammonia at concentrations commonly encountered in laboratory cage environments plays a role in the pathogenesis of murine respiratory mycoplasmosis caused by the bacterium *Mycoplasma pulmonis*. The experiments conducted without co-exposure to *M. pulmonis* are summarized in this table; the results of experiments involving co-exposure to *M. pulmonis* are discussed in Section 1.1.4, Immune System Effects.



**Figure 1-1. Exposure-response array of respiratory effects following inhalation exposure to ammonia.**

*This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.*

1 **Mode-of-Action Analysis—Respiratory Effects**

2 Data on the potential mode of action for respiratory effects associated with chronic  
3 exposure to ammonia are limited. However, acute exposure data demonstrate that injury to  
4 respiratory tissues is primarily due to ammonia's alkaline (i.e., caustic) properties from the  
5 formation of hydroxide ion when it comes in contact with water and is solubilized. Ammonia  
6 readily dissolves in the moisture on the mucous membranes, forming ammonium hydroxide, which  
7 causes liquefactive necrosis of the tissues. Specifically, ammonia directly denatures tissue proteins  
8 and causes saponification of cell membrane lipids, which leads to cell disruption and death  
9 (necrosis). In addition, the cellular breakdown of proteins results in an inflammatory response,  
10 which further damages the surrounding tissues ([Amshel et al., 2000](#); [Millea et al., 1989](#); [Jarudi and](#)  
11 [Golden, 1973](#)).

12  
13 **Summary of Respiratory Effects**

14 Evidence for respiratory toxicity associated with exposure to ammonia comes from studies  
15 in humans and animals. Multiple occupational studies involving chronic exposure to ammonia in  
16 industrial settings provide evidence of an increased prevalence of respiratory symptoms ([Rahman](#)  
17 [et al., 2007](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#)) and decreased lung function ([Rahman et al., 2007](#); [Ali et al., 2001](#);  
18 [Bhat and Ramaswamy, 1993](#)) (Table 1-1 and Appendix E, Section E.2). An increase in respiratory  
19 effects was reported both with higher workplace ammonia concentrations ([Rahman et al., 2007](#);  
20 [Ballal et al., 1998](#)) and with greater cumulative ammonia concentration (expressed in mg/m<sup>3</sup>-  
21 years) ([Ali et al., 2001](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#)). Additional evidence is provided by studies of asthma,  
22 asthma symptoms, and pulmonary function in health care and cleaning workers, in a variety of  
23 study designs and populations ([Arif and Delclos, 2012](#); [Dumas et al., 2012](#); [Lemiere et al., 2012](#);  
24 [Vizcaya et al., 2011](#); [Zock et al., 2007](#); [Medina-Ramón et al., 2006](#); [Medina-Ramón et al., 2005](#))  
25 (Table 1-2) and in studies of pulmonary function in livestock workers, specifically in the studies  
26 that accounted for effects of co-exposures such as endotoxin and dust ([Donham et al., 2000](#);  
27 [Reynolds et al., 1996](#); [Donham et al., 1995](#); [Preller et al., 1995](#); [Heederik et al., 1990](#)) (Appendix E,  
28 Table E-7). The livestock farmer studies, however, do not provide evidence of associations between  
29 ammonia and respiratory symptoms. Controlled volunteer studies of ammonia inhalation and case  
30 reports of injury in humans with inhalation exposure to ammonia provide additional support for  
31 the respiratory system as a target of ammonia toxicity when inhaled (Appendix E, Section E.2).

32 Evidence from animal studies supports an association between inhaled ammonia and  
33 respiratory effects. Short-term and subchronic animal studies show histopathological changes of  
34 respiratory tissues in several animal species (lung inflammation in guinea pigs and rats; focal or  
35 interstitial pneumonitis in monkeys, dogs, rabbits, and guinea pigs; pulmonary congestion in mice;  
36 thickening of nasal epithelium in rats and pigs; nasal inflammation or lesions in rats and mice)  
37 across different dosing regimens ([Gaafar et al., 1992](#); [Broderson et al., 1976](#); [Doig and Willoughby,](#)  
38 [1971](#); [Coon et al., 1970](#); [Anderson et al., 1964](#)) (Table 1-3 and Appendix E, Section E.3). In general,  
39 responses in respiratory tissues increased with increasing ammonia exposure concentration.

1 Based on evidence of respiratory effects in multiple human and animal studies (including  
2 epidemiological studies in different settings and populations), respiratory system effects are  
3 identified as a hazard associated with inhalation exposure to ammonia.

### 4 5 **1.1.2. Gastrointestinal Effects**

6 Reports of gastrointestinal effects of ammonia in humans are limited to case reports  
7 involving intentional or accidental ingestion of household cleaning solutions or ammonia inhalant  
8 capsules ([Dworkin et al., 2004](#); [Rosenbaum et al., 1998](#); [Christesen, 1995](#); [Wason et al., 1990](#); [Lopez  
9 et al., 1988](#); [Klein et al., 1985](#); [Klendshoj and Rejent, 1966](#)) (Appendix E, Section E.2). Clinical signs  
10 of gastrointestinal effects reported in these case studies include stomachache, nausea, diarrhea,  
11 drooling, erythematous and edematous lips, reddened and blistered tongues, dysphagia, vomiting,  
12 oropharyngeal burns, laryngeal and epiglottal edema, erythematous esophagus with severe  
13 corrosive injury, and hemorrhagic esophago-gastro-duodeno-enteritis. These effects appear to  
14 reflect the corrosive properties of ammonia, and their relevance to effects associated with chronic  
15 low-level exposure to ammonia is unclear.

16 The experimental animal toxicity database for ammonia lacks standard toxicity studies that  
17 evaluate a range of tissues/organs and endpoints. Exposure to ammonia in drinking water has,  
18 however, been associated with effects on the gastric mucosa. Evidence for this association comes  
19 from animal studies ([Hata et al., 1994](#)) designed to investigate the mechanisms by which the  
20 bacterium *Helicobacter pylori*, which produces a potent urease that increases ammonia production,  
21 may have a significant role in the etiology of chronic atrophic gastritis (Appendix E, Section E.3).  
22 Statistically significant decreases of 40–60% in the thickness of the antral gastric mucosa were  
23 reported in Sprague-Dawley rats administered ammonia in drinking water at concentrations  
24  $\geq 0.01\%$  for durations of 2–8 weeks ([Tsuji et al., 1993](#); [Kawano et al., 1991](#)); estimated doses in two  
25 studies by the same group of investigators were 22 mg/kg-day ([Kawano et al., 1991](#)) and 33 mg/kg-  
26 day ([Tsuji et al., 1993](#)). The magnitude of the decrease in gastric mucosal thickness increased with  
27 dose and duration of ammonia exposure ([Tsuji et al., 1993](#); [Kawano et al., 1991](#)). Further, the  
28 effect was more prominent in the mucosa of the antrum region of the stomach than in the body  
29 region of the stomach.<sup>4</sup> Antral gastric mucosal thickness decreased significantly (by 56–59% of the  
30 tap water control) at 4 and 8 weeks of exposure to 0.01% ammonia in drinking water, but there  
31 was no significant effect on the thickness of the body gastric mucosa. Similarly, the height of fundic  
32 and pyloric glands in the gastric mucosa was decreased by approximately 30% in Donryu rats  
33 exposed to ammonia in drinking water for up to 24 weeks at concentrations of 0.02 and 0.1%  
34 (estimated doses of 28 and 140 mg/kg-day, respectively) ([Hata et al., 1994](#)).

35 Mucosal cell proliferation and migration (as measured by 5-bromo-2'-deoxyuridine  
36 labeling) were also significantly increased in rats exposed to ammonia ([Tsuji et al., 1993](#)). The  
37 authors observed that it was not clear whether mucosal cell proliferation was primarily stimulated

---

<sup>4</sup>The body is the main, central region of the stomach. The antrum is the distal part of the stomach near the pyloric sphincter and adjacent to the body.

1 directly by ammonia or indirectly by increased cell loss followed by compensatory cell  
2 proliferation. Cell proliferation in the gastric mucosa was also affected in the 24-week drinking  
3 water study in Donryu rats ([Hata et al., 1994](#)), although the pattern differed from that reported by  
4 [Tsujii et al. \(1993\)](#). The labeling index in gastric mucosal glands was increased at earlier time  
5 points (up to week 1 for fundic glands and up to week 4 for pyloric glands), suggesting enhanced  
6 cell cycling subsequent to repeated erosion and repair. At later time points (up to 24 weeks of  
7 exposure), however, the labeling index was decreased, a finding that the authors' attributed to  
8 reduced capability of the generative cell zone of the mucosal region.

9 The gastric changes observed by [Kawano et al. \(1991\)](#), [Tsujii et al. \(1993\)](#), and [Hata et al.](#)  
10 [\(1994\)](#) were characterized by the study authors as consistent with changes observed in human  
11 atrophic gastritis; however, [Kawano et al. \(1991\)](#) and [Tsujii et al. \(1993\)](#) observed that no mucosal  
12 lesions were found macroscopically or microscopically in the stomachs of rats after exposure to  
13 ammonia in drinking water for 4–8 weeks, and [Hata et al. \(1994\)](#) reported that there was no  
14 evidence of ammonia-induced gastritis or ulceration in rats following 24 weeks of exposure to 0.1%  
15 ammonia in drinking water.

16 A relationship between ammonia ingestion and gastrointestinal effects is supported by  
17 findings from three acute oral studies in rats following gavage administration of ammonium  
18 hydroxide ([Nagy et al., 1996](#); [Takeuchi et al., 1995](#); [Murakami et al., 1990](#)). [Takeuchi et al. \(1995\)](#)  
19 reported hemorrhagic necrosis of the gastric mucosa in male Sprague-Dawley rats that received a  
20 single gavage dose of ammonium hydroxide (concentration  $\geq 1\%$ ). [Nagy et al. \(1996\)](#) observed  
21 severe hemorrhagic mucosal lesions in female Sprague-Dawley rats 15 minutes after exposure to an  
22 estimated dose of 48 mg/kg ammonium hydroxide via gavage. Lesions of the gastric mucosa,  
23 including necrosis, were observed in male Sprague-Dawley rats 15 minutes after being given 1 mL  
24 of ammonia by intubation at concentrations of 0.5–1%, but not at concentrations of 0.025–0.1%  
25 ([Murakami et al., 1990](#)).

26 The evidence of gastrointestinal effects in experimental animals following oral exposure to  
27 ammonia is summarized in Table 1-4 and as an exposure-response array in Figure 1-2.

28

Table 1-4. Evidence pertaining to gastrointestinal effects in animals

Study design and references	Results <sup>a</sup>												
<b>Histopathologic changes of the gastric mucosa</b>													
<p><a href="#">Kawano et al. (1991)</a> Sprague-Dawley rat; male; 6/group 0, 0.01, or 0.1% in drinking water (0, 22, or 220 mg/kg-d)<sup>b</sup> for 2 or 4 wks</p>	<p>% change in thickness of mucosa compared to control:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td><u>Antrum</u></td> <td><u>Body</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wk 2: 0, -5, -20*%</td> <td>Wk 2: 0, -1, 3%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wk 4: 0, -38*, -61*%</td> <td>Wk 4: 0, -22, -30*%</td> </tr> </table>	<u>Antrum</u>	<u>Body</u>	Wk 2: 0, -5, -20*%	Wk 2: 0, -1, 3%	Wk 4: 0, -38*, -61*%	Wk 4: 0, -22, -30*%						
<u>Antrum</u>	<u>Body</u>												
Wk 2: 0, -5, -20*%	Wk 2: 0, -1, 3%												
Wk 4: 0, -38*, -61*%	Wk 4: 0, -22, -30*%												
<p><a href="#">Tsuji et al. (1993)</a> Sprague-Dawley rat; male; 36/group 0 or 0.01% in drinking water (0 or 33 mg/kg-d)<sup>c</sup> for 3 d or 1, 2, 4, or 8 wks; tap water provided for the balance of the 8-wk study</p>	<p>% change in thickness of mucosa compared to control (at d 3, wks 1, 2, 4, and 8):</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td><u>Antrum</u></td> <td><u>Body</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td>D 3: 0, 8%</td> <td>D 3: 0, 5%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wk 1: 0, -4%</td> <td>Wk 1: 0, 1%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wk 2: 0, 6%</td> <td>Wk 2: 0, 4%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wk 4: 0, -44%*</td> <td>Wk 4: 0, -1%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wk 8: 0, -41%*</td> <td>Wk 8: 0, -5%</td> </tr> </table> <p>(extracted from Figure 3 of <a href="#">Tsuji et al., 1993</a>)</p>	<u>Antrum</u>	<u>Body</u>	D 3: 0, 8%	D 3: 0, 5%	Wk 1: 0, -4%	Wk 1: 0, 1%	Wk 2: 0, 6%	Wk 2: 0, 4%	Wk 4: 0, -44%*	Wk 4: 0, -1%	Wk 8: 0, -41%*	Wk 8: 0, -5%
<u>Antrum</u>	<u>Body</u>												
D 3: 0, 8%	D 3: 0, 5%												
Wk 1: 0, -4%	Wk 1: 0, 1%												
Wk 2: 0, 6%	Wk 2: 0, 4%												
Wk 4: 0, -44%*	Wk 4: 0, -1%												
Wk 8: 0, -41%*	Wk 8: 0, -5%												
<p><a href="#">Hata et al. (1994)</a> Donryu rat; male; 6/group and time point 0, 0.02, or 0.1% in drinking water (0, 28, or 140 mg/kg-d)<sup>c</sup> for 1, 3, or 5 d and 1, 4, 8, 12, or 24 wks</p>	<p>% change in gland height compared to control (week 24):</p> <p>Fundic region: 0, -18*, -34*% Pyloric region: 0, -17*, -26*% (estimated from Figure 3 of <a href="#">Hata et al., 1994</a>)</p> <p>% change in labeling index compared to control (week 24):</p> <p>Fundic region: 0, -35*, -27*% Pyloric region: 0, -17*, -11*%</p>												

<sup>a</sup>Percent change compared to control calculated as: (treated value – control value)/control value x 100.

<sup>b</sup>Doses were estimated based on a body weight of 230 g for male rats and an estimated drinking water intake of 50 mL/day (as reported by study authors).

<sup>c</sup>Doses were estimated based on an initial body weight of 150 g and an estimated drinking water intake of 50 mL/day (as reported by study authors).

<sup>d</sup>Body weights and drinking water intakes were not provided by the authors. Doses were estimated assuming a body weight of 267 g [subchronic value for a male Sprague-Dawley rat, Table 1-2, ([U.S. EPA, 1988](#))] and a drinking water intake of 37 mL/d [subchronic value for a male Sprague-Dawley rat, Table 1-5 ([U.S. EPA, 1988](#))].

\*Statistically significantly different from the control ( $p < 0.05$ ).

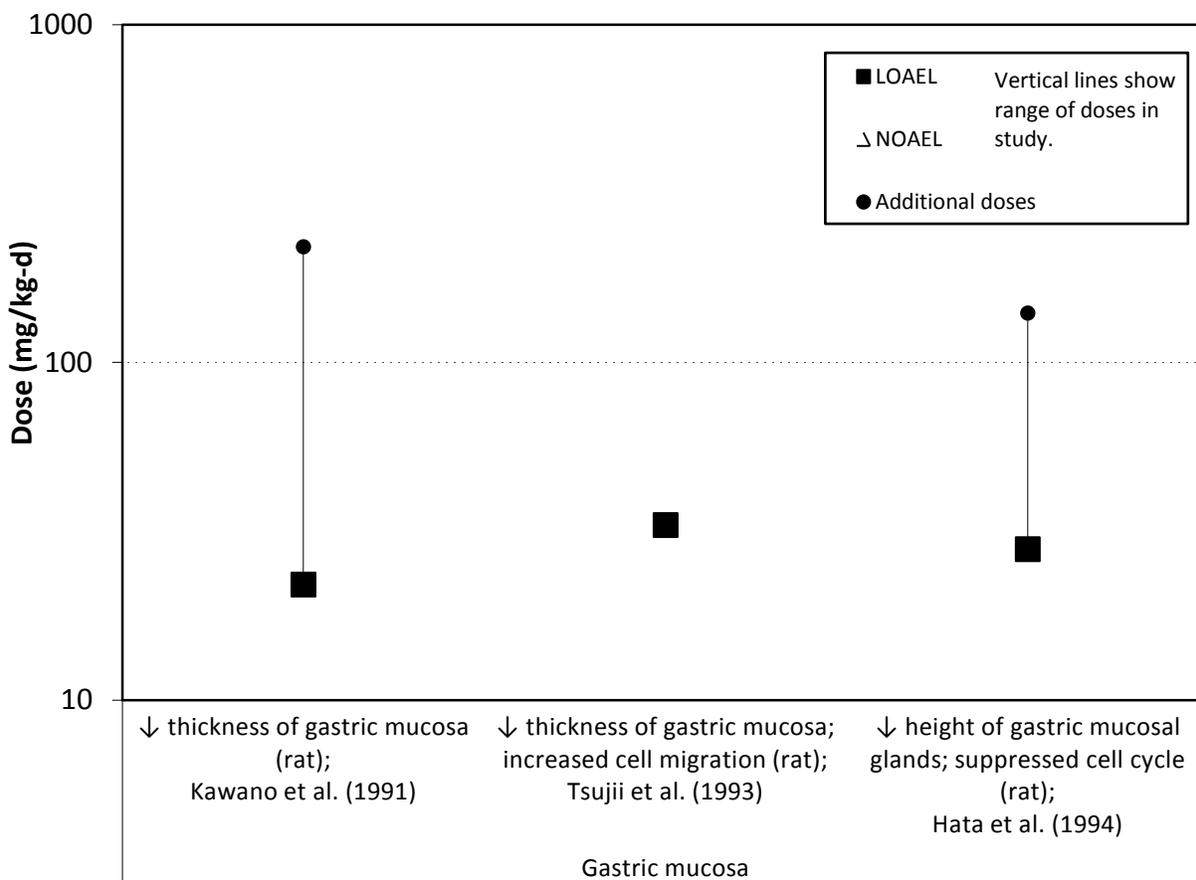


Figure 1-2. Exposure-response array of gastrointestinal effects following oral exposure to ammonia.

**Mode-of-Action Analysis—Gastrointestinal Effects**

The alkalinity of the ammonia solution does not seem to play a direct role in the gastric effects associated with ammonia. An ammonia solution (pH 10.3) produced dose-related acute macroscopic mucosal lesions, whereas a glycine-sodium hydroxide buffer (pH 10.3) or ammonium chloride (pH 4.5) did not (Tsujii et al., 1992a). Rather, the available evidence suggests that the ability of ammonia to damage the gastric mucosa is related to its ionization state. Ammonia (NH<sub>3</sub>) (in its non-ionized state) can easily penetrate cell membranes, whereas the ionized form (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>) is less permeable to cell membranes (Tsujii et al., 1992a). The finding that antral and body regions of the rat stomach mucosa responded differently following administration of 33 mg/kg-day ammonia in drinking water for 8 weeks (Tsujii et al., 1993) is consistent with the influence of ionization. The hydrogen chloride secreted by the mucosa in the body of the stomach resulted in a lower pH in the body mucosa and a corresponding decrease in the ratio of ammonia to NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>. In contrast, in the antral mucosa (a nonacid-secreting area), the pH was higher, the ratio of ammonia to NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> was increased, and measures of gastric mucosal changes were increased compared to those observed in the stomach body where there was relatively higher exposure to NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>.

1 Several specific events that may contribute to the induction of gastric mucosal changes by  
2 ammonia have been proposed. Increased cell vacuolation and decreased viability of cells were  
3 associated with increasing ammonia concentration in an in vitro system ([Mégraud et al., 1992](#)); the  
4 effect was not linked to pH change because of the high buffering properties of the medium. Using  
5 an in situ rat stomach model, hemorrhagic mucosal lesions induced by ammonia were associated  
6 with the rapid release and activation of cathepsins, which are mammalian cysteine proteases that  
7 are released from lysosomes or activated in the cytosol and can be damaging to cells, tissues, or  
8 organs ([Nagy et al., 1996](#)). Ammonia also appears to inhibit cellular and mitochondrial respiration,  
9 possibly by elevating intracellular or intraorganelle pH or by impairing adenosine triphosphate  
10 synthesis ([Tsuji et al., 1992a](#)). [Mori et al. \(1998\)](#) proposed a role for increased release of  
11 endothelin-1 and thyrotropin-releasing hormone from the gastric mucosa in ammonia-induced  
12 gastric mucosal injury based on findings in rats given ammonia intragastrically. [Tsuji et al.](#)  
13 [\(1992b\)](#) suggested that ammonia may accelerate mucosal cell desquamation and stimulate cell  
14 proliferation by a compensatory mechanism. Overall, although hypotheses have been proposed, a  
15 specific mechanism(s) by which ammonia may induce cellular toxicity has not been established,  
16

### **Summary of Gastrointestinal Effects**

17 Evidence that oral exposure to ammonia causes gastrointestinal effects is based on human  
18 case reports and studies in rats that focused on mechanistic understandings of effects of ammonia  
19 on the gastric mucosa. Acute gastric toxicity observed in case reports involving intentional or  
20 accidental ingestion of cleaning solutions or ammonia inhalant capsules appears to reflect the  
21 corrosive properties of ammonia. Whether these acute effects are relevant to toxicity following  
22 chronic low-level ammonia exposure is not known. Indirect evidence for the biological plausibility  
23 of gastric tissue as a target of ammonia toxicity is provided by the association between the  
24 bacterium *H. pylori*, which produces urease that catalyzes urea into ammonia, and human diseases  
25 of the upper gastrointestinal tract (including chronic gastritis, gastric ulcers, and stomach cancer).  
26

27 Three mechanistic studies in male rats ([Hata et al., 1994](#); [Tsuji et al., 1993](#); [Kawano et al.,](#)  
28 [1991](#)) provide consistent evidence of changes in the gastric mucosa associated with exposure to  
29 ammonia in drinking water, including decreased thickness or gland height. These gastric changes  
30 did not correlate, however, with other lesions in the stomach. No evidence of other microscopic  
31 lesions, gastritis, or ulceration was found in the stomachs of these rats. It is also interesting to note  
32 that chronic toxicity studies of other ammonia compounds have not identified the gastrointestinal  
33 tract as a target of ammonia toxicity. For example, no treatment-related changes in the stomach or  
34 other parts of the gastrointestinal tract were observed in Wistar rats exposed to ammonium  
35 chloride in the diet for 130 weeks at doses up to 1,200 mg/kg-day ([Lina and Kuijpers, 2004](#)) or in  
36 F344 rats exposed to ammonium sulfate for 104 weeks at a dose up to 1,371 mg/kg-day ([Ota et al.,](#)  
37 [2006](#)) (Appendix C, Table C-1). Therefore, while drinking water studies with a mechanistic focus  
38 provide evidence for ammonia-related changes in rat gastric mucosa, adverse changes of the  
39 gastrointestinal tract were not identified in standard toxicity bioassays of ammonia compounds.

1 Mechanistic studies in rodent models support the biological plausibility that ammonia  
2 exposure may be associated with gastric effects in humans. Conditions that favor the un-ionized  
3 form of ammonia (pH > 9.25) facilitate penetration of the cell membrane and are associated with  
4 greater gastric cytotoxicity. In summary, the evidence primarily from human case reports as  
5 supported by mechanistic studies in experimental animals suggests that gastric effects are a  
6 potential hazard associated with oral exposure to ammonia.

### 7 8 **1.1.3. Immune System Effects**

9 A limited number of studies have evaluated the immunotoxicity of ammonia in human  
10 populations and in experimental animal models. Immunological function was evaluated in two  
11 independent investigations of livestock farmers exposed to ammonia via inhalation.  
12 Immunoglobulin G- (IgG) and E-specific (IgE) antibodies for pig skin and urine ([Crook et al., 1991](#)),  
13 elevated neutrophils from nasal washes, and increased white blood cell counts ([Cormier et al.,  
14 2000](#)) were reported. These data on immunological function are suggestive of immunostimulatory  
15 effects; however, the test subjects were also exposed to a number of other respirable agents in  
16 addition to ammonia, such as endotoxin, bacteria, fungi, and mold, that are known to stimulate  
17 immune responses. Data in humans following exposure to ammonia only are not available.

18 Animal studies that examined ammonia immunotoxicity were conducted using short-term  
19 inhalation exposures and were measured by three general types of immune assays: host resistance,  
20 T cell proliferation, and delayed-type hypersensitivity. Immunotoxicity studies of ammonia using  
21 measures of host resistance provide the most relevant data for assessing immune function since  
22 they directly measure ability of the immune system to control microorganism growth. Other  
23 available studies of ammonia employed assays that evaluated immune function. Changes in  
24 immune cell populations without corresponding functional data are considered to be the least  
25 predictive, and studies that looked only at these endpoints ([Gustin et al., 1994](#); [Neumann et al.,  
26 1987](#)) were excluded from the hazard identification for ammonia.

27 Several host resistance studies utilized lung pathogens to assess bacterial clearance  
28 following ammonia exposure; however, these studies were not designed to discriminate between  
29 direct immunosuppression associated with ammonia exposure or immune effects secondary to  
30 damage to the protective mucosal epithelium of the respiratory tract. The available studies also do  
31 not correlate increased bacterial colonization with reduced immune function. Lung lesions, both  
32 gross and microscopic, were positively correlated with ammonia concentration in F344 rats  
33 continuously exposed to ammonia in an inhalation chamber for 7 days prior to inoculation with 10<sup>8</sup>  
34 colony forming units [CFU] of *Mycoplasma pulmonis* followed by up to 42 days of ammonia  
35 exposure post inoculation ([Broderon et al., 1976](#)). (Inoculation with the respiratory pathogen  
36 *M. pulmonis* causes murine respiratory mycoplasmosis [MRM] characterized by lung lesions.) The  
37 incidence of lung lesions was significantly increased at ammonia concentrations  $\geq 35$  mg/m<sup>3</sup>,  
38 suggesting that ammonia exposure decreased bacterial clearance resulting in the development of *M.*  
39 *pulmonis*-induced MRM. However, increasing ammonia concentration was not associated with  
40 increased CFU of *M. pulmonis* isolated from the respiratory tract. The high number of inoculating

1 CFU could have overwhelmed the innate immune response and elicited a maximal response that  
2 could not be further increased in immunocompromised animals.

3 Conversely, significantly increased CFU of *M. pulmonis* bacteria isolated in the trachea, nasal  
4 passages, lungs, and larynx were observed in F344 rats continuously exposed to 71 mg/m<sup>3</sup>  
5 ammonia for 7 days prior to *M. pulmonis* (10<sup>4</sup>–10<sup>6</sup> CFU) inoculation and continued for 28 days post  
6 inoculation ([Schoeb et al., 1982](#)). This increase in bacterial colonization indicates a reduction in  
7 bacterial clearance following exposure to ammonia. Lesions were not assessed in this study.

8 OF1 mice exposed to 354 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for 7 days prior to inoculation with a 50% lethal  
9 dose (LD<sub>50</sub>) of *Pasteurella multocida* exhibited significantly increased mortality compared to  
10 controls (86 versus 50%, respectively); however, an 8-hour exposure was insufficient to affect  
11 mortality ([Richard et al., 1978a](#)). The authors suggested that the irritating action of ammonia  
12 destroyed the tracheobronchial mucosa and caused inflammatory lesions thereby increasing  
13 sensitivity to respiratory infection with prolonged ammonia exposure.

14 Pig studies support the findings observed in the rodent studies that ammonia exposure  
15 increases the colonization of respiratory pathogens. [Andreasen et al. \(2000\)](#) demonstrated that  
16 63 days of ammonia exposure increased the number of bacterial positive nasal swabs following  
17 inoculation with *P. multocida* and *Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae*; however, the effect was not dose  
18 responsive and did not result in an increase in lung lesions. Additional data obtained from pigs  
19 suggest that ammonia exposure eliminates the commensal flora of the nasal cavities, which allows  
20 for increased colonization of *P. multocida*; however, this effect abates following cessation of  
21 ammonia exposure ([Hamilton et al., 1999](#); [Hamilton et al., 1998](#)).

22 Suppressed cell-mediated immunity and decreased T cell proliferation was observed  
23 following ammonia exposure. Using a delayed-type hypersensitivity test to evaluate cell-mediated  
24 immunity, Hartley guinea pigs were vaccinated with *Mycobacterium bovis* bacillus Calmette-Guérin  
25 (BCG) and exposed to ammonia followed by intradermal challenge with a purified protein  
26 derivative (PPD). Dermal lesion size was reduced in animals exposed to 64 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia,  
27 indicating immunosuppression ([Targowski et al., 1984](#)). Blood and bronchial lymphocytes  
28 harvested from naïve guinea pigs treated with the same 3-week ammonia exposure and stimulated  
29 with phytohaemagglutinin or concanavalin A demonstrated reduced T cell proliferation ([Targowski  
30 et al., 1984](#)). Bactericidal activity in alveolar macrophages isolated from ammonia-exposed guinea  
31 pigs was not affected. Lymphocytes and macrophages isolated from unexposed guinea pigs and  
32 treated with ammonia in vitro showed reduced proliferation and bactericidal capacity only at  
33 concentrations that reduced viability, indicating nonspecific effects of ammonia-induced  
34 immunosuppression ([Targowski et al., 1984](#)). These data suggest that T cells may be the target of  
35 ammonia since specific macrophage effects were not observed.

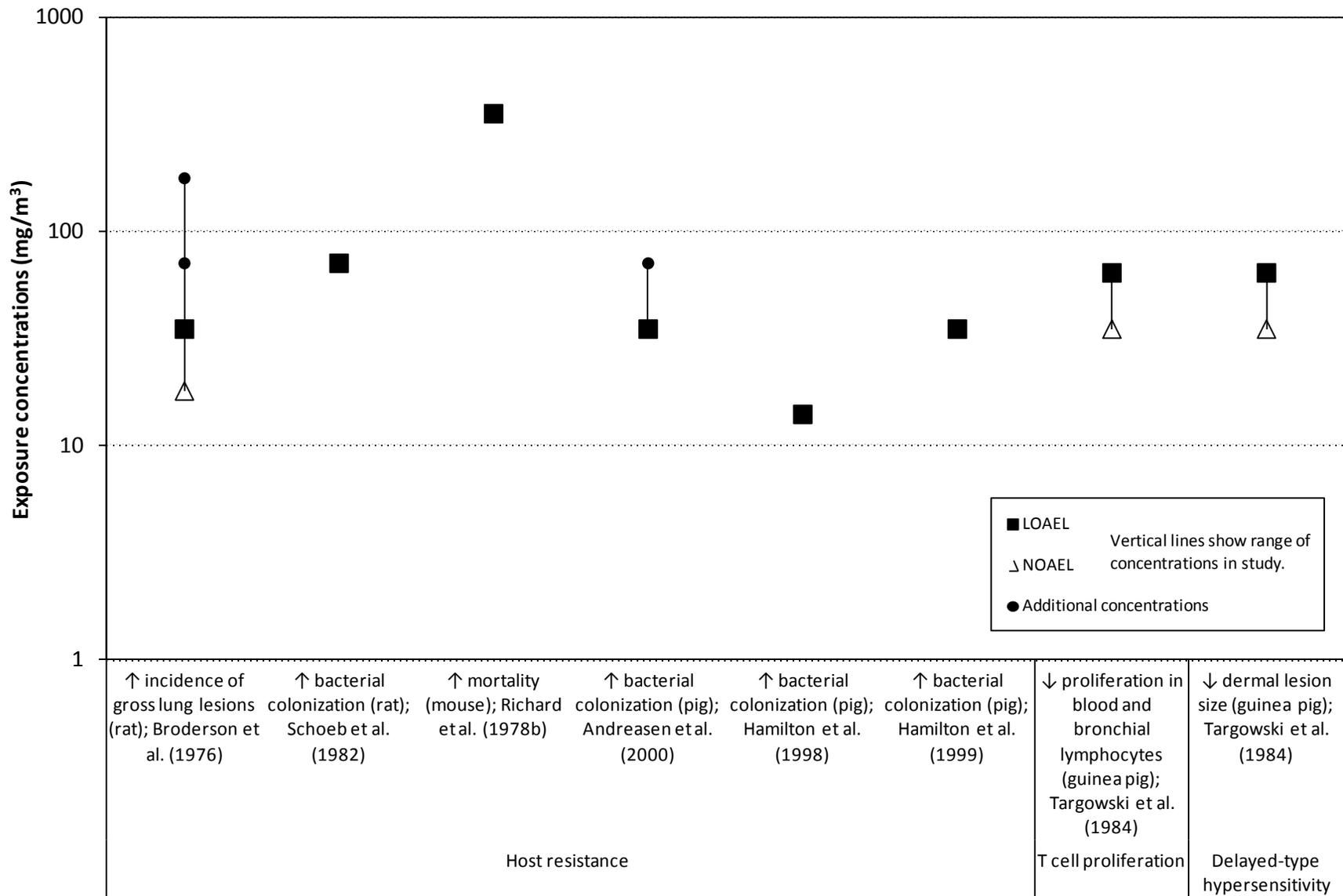
36 The evidence of immune system effects in experimental animals exposed to ammonia is  
37 summarized in Table 1-5 and as an exposure-response array in Figure 1-3.

38

Table 1-5. Evidence pertaining to immune system effects in animals

Study design and reference	Results
<b>Host resistance</b>	
<b><a href="#">Broderon et al. (1976)</a></b> F344 rat; male and female; 11–12/sex/ group ≤5 (control), 25, 50, 100, or 250 ppm (≤3.5 [control], 18, 35, 71, or 177 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ), 7 d (continuous exposure) pre-inoculation/28–42 d post-inoculation with <i>M. pulmonis</i>	% of animals with gross lung lesions: 16, 46, 66*, 33, and 83%  No effect on CFU.
<b><a href="#">Schoeb et al. (1982)</a></b> F344 rat; 5-15/group (sex unknown) <2 or 100 ppm (<1.4 [control] or 71 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ), 7 d (continuous exposure) pre-inoculation/ 28 d post-inoculation with <i>M. pulmonis</i>	↑ bacterial colonization (as a result of reduced bacterial clearance).
<b><a href="#">Richard et al. (1978a)</a></b> OF1 mouse; male; 99/group 0 or 500 ppm (0 or 354 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ), 8 hrs or 7 d (continuous exposure), prior to infection with <i>P. multocida</i>	% Mortality: 50 and 86%*
<b><a href="#">Andreasen et al. (2000)</a></b> Landrace X large white pigs; 10/group (sex unknown) <5 (control), 50, or 100 ppm (3.5, 35, or 71 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ), 63 d (continuous exposure) inoculated with <i>M. hyopneumoniae</i> on day 9 and <i>P. multocida</i> on d 28, 42, and 56	% of animals with positive day 49 nasal swab: 24, 100*, and 90%*
<b><a href="#">Hamilton et al. (1998)</a></b> Large white pigs; 4–7/group (sex unknown) 0 or 20 ppm (0 or 14 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ), 14 d (continuous exposure), inoculated with <i>P. multocida</i> on d 0	↑ bacterial colonization
<b><a href="#">Hamilton et al. (1999)</a></b> Large white pigs; 5/group (sex unknown) 0 or 50 ppm (0 or 35 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ), 1 wk pre-inoculation with <i>P. multocida</i> , 3 wks post-inoculation	↑ bacterial colonization  <i>Bacteria isolated from nasal cavities:</i> 3.18 and 4.30* CFU
<b>T cell proliferation</b>	
<b><a href="#">Targowski et al. (1984)</a></b> Hartley guinea pig; 8/group (sex unknown) <15, 50, or 90 ppm (<11 [control], 35, or 64 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ), 3 wks (continuous exposure)	↓ proliferation in blood and bronchial T cells.
<b>Delayed-type hypersensitivity</b>	
<b><a href="#">Targowski et al. (1984)</a></b> Hartley guinea pig, BCG immunized; 8/group (sex unknown) <15, 50, or 90 ppm (<11 [control], 35, or 64 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ), 3 wks (continuous exposure) followed by PPD challenge	<i>Mean diameter of dermal lesion (mm):</i> 12, 12.6, and 8.7*

\*Statistically significantly different from the control ( $p < 0.05$ ).



**Figure 1-3. Exposure-response array of immune system effects following inhalation exposure to ammonia.**

1 **Summary of Immune System Effects**

2 The evidence for ammonia immunotoxicity is based on epidemiological and animal studies.  
3 Available epidemiological studies that addressed immunological function are confounded by  
4 exposures to a number of other respirable agents that have been demonstrated to be  
5 immunostimulatory. Single-exposure human studies of ammonia evaluating immune endpoints are  
6 not available. Therefore, human studies are not particularly informative for evaluating whether  
7 ammonia has immunotoxic properties.

8 Animal studies provide consistent evidence of elevated bacterial growth following ammonia  
9 exposure. This is supported by observations of lung lesions ([Broderick et al., 1976](#)), elevated CFU  
10 ([Schoeb et al., 1982](#)), and increased mortality ([Richard et al., 1978a](#)) in rats or mice exposed to  
11 ammonia; however, the findings from the [Broderick et al. \(1976\)](#) study (which described the  
12 percent of animals with gross lesions) were not dose-responsive, and the other studies used single  
13 concentrations of ammonia and therefore did not provide information on dose-response. A single  
14 study suggested that T cells are inhibited by ammonia ([Targowski et al., 1984](#)), but the data were  
15 not dose responsive.

16 Overall, the evidence in humans and animals indicates that ammonia exposure may be  
17 associated with immunotoxicity, but it is unclear if elevated bacterial colonization is the result of  
18 damage to the protective mucosal epithelium of the respiratory tract or the result of suppressed  
19 immunity. Therefore, the evidence does not support the immune system as a potential hazard of  
20 ammonia exposure.

21  
22 **1.1.4. Other Systemic Effects**

23 Although the majority of information suggests that ammonia induces effects in and around  
24 the portal of entry, there is limited evidence that ammonia can produce effects on organs distal  
25 from the portal of entry, including the liver, adrenal gland, kidney, spleen, and heart. Alterations in  
26 liver function, based on elevated mean levels of aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine  
27 aminotransferase (ALT), and blood urea, decreased hemoglobin, and inhibition of catalase and  
28 monoamine oxidase (MAO) activities, were reported in workers in an Egyptian urea fertilizer  
29 production plant ([Hamid and El-Gazzar, 1996](#)); there were no direct measurements of workplace  
30 exposure to ammonia and information on control for potentially confounding exposures was not  
31 provided (Table 1-6).

32 Evidence of liver toxicity in animals comes from observations of histopathological  
33 alterations in the liver. Fatty changes in liver plate cells were consistently reported at exposure  
34 concentrations  $\geq 470$  mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia in rats, guinea pigs, rabbits, dogs, and monkeys following  
35 identical subchronic inhalation exposure regimens ([Coon et al., 1970](#)). Congestion of the liver was  
36 observed in guinea pigs following subchronic and short-term inhalation exposure to 35 and  
37 120 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ([Anderson et al., 1964](#); [Weatherby, 1952](#)); no liver effects were observed in similarly  
38 exposed mice at 14 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ([Anderson et al., 1964](#); [Weatherby, 1952](#)).

39 No histopathological or hematological effects were observed in rats, guinea pigs, rabbits,  
40 dogs, or monkeys when these animals were repeatedly, but not continuously, exposed to ammonia

## ***Toxicological Review of Ammonia***

1 even at high concentrations (e.g., 770 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 8 hours/day, 5 days/week; Table 1-8 ), suggesting  
2 that animals can recover from intermittent exposure to elevated ammonia levels ([Coon et al., 1970](#)).  
3 In addition, no effects on nonrespiratory system organs were observed in mice exposed to 14  
4 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for up to 6 weeks ([Anderson et al., 1964](#)).

5 Adrenal effects were observed in animals following subchronic and short-term exposure to  
6 ammonia. Increased mean adrenal weights and fat content of the adrenal gland, as well as  
7 histological changes in the adrenal gland (enlarged cells of the zona fasciculata of the adrenal cortex  
8 that were rich in lipid), were observed in rabbits exposed via gavage to ammonium hydroxide for  
9 durations ranging from 5.5 days to 17 months ([Fazekas, 1939](#)). The strength of these findings is  
10 limited by inadequate reporting and study design. A separate study identified early degenerative  
11 changes in the adrenal glands of guinea pigs exposed to 120 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia by inhalation for  
12 18 weeks ([Weatherby, 1952](#)), providing additional limited evidence for effects on the adrenal gland.

13 Evidence that inhaled ammonia can affect the kidney and spleen is limited to studies in  
14 experimental animals. Nonspecific degenerative changes in the kidneys (not further described) in  
15 rats exposed to 262 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for 90 days were reported ([Coon et al., 1970](#)).

16 Histopathological evaluation of other animal species in the same study exposed to 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, an  
17 ammonia concentration that induced a high rate of mortality in rats, consistently showed  
18 alterations in the kidneys (calcification and proliferation of tubular epithelium; incidence not  
19 reported). Exposure of guinea pigs to inhaled ammonia at a concentration of 120 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 18  
20 weeks (but not 6 or 12 weeks) resulted in histopathological alterations (congestion) of the kidneys  
21 and spleen, although incidence was not reported ([Weatherby, 1952](#)). Enlarged and congested  
22 spleens were reported in guinea pigs exposed to 35 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for 6 weeks in a separate  
23 study ([Anderson et al., 1964](#)).

24 Myocardial fibrosis was observed in monkeys, dogs, rabbits, guinea pigs, and rats following  
25 subchronic inhalation exposure to 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia; no changes were observed at lower  
26 concentrations ([Coon et al., 1970](#)). At the same concentration, ocular irritation (characterized as  
27 heavy lacrimation, erythema, discharge, and ocular opacity of the cornea) was also reported by  
28 [Coon et al. \(1970\)](#) in dogs and rabbits, but was not observed in similarly exposed monkeys or rats.

29 Additionally, there is limited evidence of biochemical or metabolic effects of acute or short-  
30 term ammonia exposure. Evidence of slight acidosis, as indicated by a decrease in blood pH, was  
31 reported in rats exposed to 18 or 212 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia for 5 days; the study authors stated that  
32 differences in pH leveled off at 10 and 15 days ([Manninen et al., 1988](#)). In another study, blood pH  
33 in rats was not affected by exposure to ammonia at concentrations up to 818 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for up to  
34 24 hours ([Schaerdel et al., 1983](#)).

35 Encephalopathy related to ammonia may occur in humans following disruption of the  
36 body's normal homeostatic regulation of the glutamine and urea cycles, e.g., due to severe liver or  
37 kidney disease resulting in elevated ammonia levels in blood ([Minana et al., 1995](#); [Souba, 1987](#)).  
38 Acute inhalation exposure studies have identified alterations in amino acid levels and  
39 neurotransmitter metabolism (including glutamine concentrations) in the brain of rats and mice  
40 ([Manninen and Savolainen, 1989](#); [Manninen et al., 1988](#); [Sadasivudu et al., 1979](#); [Sadasivudu and](#)

**Toxicological Review of Ammonia**

1 [Radha Krishna Murthy, 1978](#)). It has been suggested that glutamate and  $\gamma$ -amino butyric acid play a  
2 role in ammonia-induced neurotoxicity ([Jones, 2002](#)). There is no evidence, however, that  
3 ammonia is neurotoxic in humans or animals following chronic inhalation exposures.

4 In the only study of the reproductive and developmental toxicity of ammonia, no changes in  
5 reproductive or developmental endpoints were found between two groups of female pigs  
6 (crossbred gilts) exposed to ammonia via inhalation for 6 weeks at mean concentrations of 5 or  
7 25 mg/m<sup>3</sup> and then mated ([Diekman et al., 1993](#)). A control group without ammonia exposure was  
8 not evaluated. Age at puberty did not differ significantly between the two groups. Gilts exposed to  
9 25 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia weighed 7% less ( $p < 0.05$ ) at puberty than those exposed to 5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>;  
10 however, body weights of the two groups were similar at gestation day 30. Conception rates in the  
11 mated females were similar between the two groups (94.1 versus 100% in low- versus high-  
12 exposure groups). At sacrifice on day 30 of gestation, there were no significant differences between  
13 the two exposed groups in body weights of the pregnant gilts, number of corpora lutea, number of  
14 live fetuses, or weight and length of the fetuses. The strength of the findings from this study are  
15 limited by the absence of a control group and possible confounding by exposures to bacterial and  
16 mycoplasma pathogens.

17 The evidence of systemic toxicity in humans and experimental animals exposed to ammonia  
18 is summarized in Tables 1-6 and 1-7 and as an exposure-response array in Figure 1-4.

19

**Table 1-6. Evidence pertaining to other systemic effects in humans**

Study design and reference	Results
<p><a href="#">Hamid and El-Gazzar (1996)</a> (Egypt) Urea fertilizer plant workers (all men); 30 exposed and 30 control subjects (from administrative departments). Average employment duration: 12 yrs <b>Exposure:</b> No direct measurement of ammonia concentrations; blood urea used as surrogate measure <b>Outcome:</b> Blood sample measurements of AST, ALT, hemoglobin, and catalase and monoamine oxidase enzyme activities</p>	<p>↑ AST, ALT, and blood urea in exposed workers; ↓ hemoglobin and inhibition of catalase and MAO.</p>

20  
21  
22

Table 1-7. Evidence pertaining to other systemic effects in animals

Study design and reference	Results
<b>Liver effects</b>	
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a>                      Sprague-Dawley and Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group                      New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group                      Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group                      Squirrel monkey (<i>S. sciureus</i>); male; 3/group                      Beagle dog; male; 2/group                      0, 155, or 770 mg/m<sup>3</sup> 8 hrs/d, 5 d/wk for 6 wks</p>	<p>No histopathologic changes observed.</p>
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a>                      Sprague-Dawley and Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group                      New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group                      Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group                      Squirrel monkey (<i>S. sciureus</i>); male; 3/group                      Beagle dog; male; 2/group                      0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	<p>Fatty liver changes in plate cells at 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a>                      Sprague-Dawley or Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group                      0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 127, 262, or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	<p>Fatty liver changes in plate cells at 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a,b</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Anderson et al. (1964)</a>                      Swiss albino mouse; male and female; 4/group                      0 or 20 ppm (0 or 14 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 7–42 d</p>	<p>No visible signs of liver toxicity.</p>
<p><a href="#">Weatherby (1952)</a>                      Guinea pig (strain not specified); male; 6–12/group                      0 or 170 ppm (0 or 120 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 6 hrs/d, 5 d/wk for 6, 12 or 18 wks</p>	<p>Congestion of the liver at 18 wks, not observed at earlier times.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><a href="#">Anderson et al. (1964)</a>                      Guinea pig (strain not specified); male and female; 2/group                      0 or 20 ppm (0 or 14 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 7–42 d or 50 ppm (35 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 42 d</p>	<p>Congestion of the liver at 35 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 42 d.<sup>a</sup></p>
<b>Adrenal gland effects</b>	
<p><a href="#">Weatherby (1952)</a>                      Guinea pig (strain not specified); male; 6–12/group                      0 and 170 ppm (0 and 120 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) 6 hrs/d, 5 d/wk for 6, 12, or 18 wks</p>	<p>“Early” degenerative changes in the adrenal gland (swelling of cells, degeneration of the cytoplasm with loss of normal granular structure) at 18 wks, not observed at earlier times.<sup>a</sup></p>

Table 1-7. Evidence pertaining to other systemic effects in animals

Study design and reference	Results
<p><b>Fazekas (1939)</b> Rabbit (strain and sex not specified); 16–33/group 50–80 mL of a 0.5 or 1.0% ammonium hydroxide solution by gavage; initially every other day, later daily; duration ranged from 5.5 d to 17 mo; estimated dose: 61–110 and 120–230 mg/kg-d, respectively<sup>c</sup></p>	<p>Mean adrenal weight compared to control: 95%  Fat content of adrenal gland compared to control: 4.5-fold ↑.  Note: results by dose level were not provided.</p>
<b>Kidney and spleen effects</b>	
<p><b>Coon et al. (1970)</b> Sprague-Dawley and Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group Squirrel monkey (<i>S. sciureus</i>); male; 3/group Beagle dog; male; 2/group 0, 155, or 770 mg/m<sup>3</sup> 8 hrs/d, 5 d/wk for 6 wks</p>	<p>No histopathologic changes observed.</p>
<p><b>Coon et al. (1970)</b> New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group Squirrel monkey (<i>S. sciureus</i>); male; 3/group Beagle dog; male; 2/group 0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	<p>Calcification and proliferation of renal tubular epithelium at 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><b>Coon et al. (1970)</b> Sprague-Dawley or Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group 0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 127, 262, or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	<p>Calcification and proliferation of renal tubular epithelium at 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a,b</sup></p>
<p><b>Anderson et al. (1964)</b> Swiss albino mouse; male and female; 4/group 0 or 20 ppm (0 or 14 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 7–42 d</p>	<p>No visible signs of toxicity.</p>
<p><b>Weatherby (1952)</b> Guinea pig (strain not specified); male; 6–12/group 0 or 170 ppm (0 or 120 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) 6 hrs/d, 5 d/wk for 6, 12, or 18 wks</p>	<p>Congestion of the spleen and kidneys.<sup>a</sup></p>
<p><b>Anderson et al. (1964)</b> Guinea pig (strain not specified); male and female; 2/group 0 or 20 ppm (0 or 14 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 7–42 d or 50 ppm (35 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 42 d</p>	<p>Enlarged and congested spleens at 35 mg/m<sup>3</sup>.<sup>a</sup></p>
<b>Myocardial effects</b>	
<p><b>Coon et al. (1970)</b> Sprague-Dawley and Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group Squirrel monkey (<i>S. sciureus</i>); male; 3/group Beagle dog; male; 2/group 0, 155, or 770 mg/m<sup>3</sup> 8 hrs/d, 5 d/wk for 6 wks</p>	<p>No histopathologic changes observed.</p>

Table 1-7. Evidence pertaining to other systemic effects in animals

Study design and reference	Results
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a>                      New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group                      Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group                      Squirrel monkey (<i>S. sciureus</i>); male; 3/group                      Beagle dog; male; 2/group                      0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	Myocardial fibrosis at 470 mg/m <sup>3</sup> . <sup>a,b</sup>
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a>                      Sprague-Dawley or Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group                      0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 127, 262, or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	Myocardial fibrosis at 470 mg/m <sup>3</sup> . <sup>a</sup>
<b>Ocular effects</b>	
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a>                      Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group                      Squirrel monkey (<i>S. sciureus</i>); male; 3/group                      0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	No ocular irritation observed.
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a>                      Sprague-Dawley and Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group                      New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group                      Princeton-derived guinea pig; male and female; 15/group                      Squirrel monkey (<i>S. sciureus</i>); male; 3/group                      Beagle dog; male; 2/group                      0, 155, or 770 mg/m<sup>3</sup> 8 hrs/d, 5 d/wk for 6 wks</p>	No ocular irritation observed.
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a>                      Sprague-Dawley and Long-Evans rat; male and female; 15–51/group                      0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 127, 262, or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	No ocular irritation observed.
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a>                      New Zealand albino rabbit; male; 3/group                      0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	Erythema, discharge, and ocular opacity over ¼–½ of cornea at 470 mg/m <sup>3</sup> . <sup>a</sup>
<p><a href="#">Coon et al. (1970)</a>                      Beagle dog; male; 2/group                      0 or 40 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 114 d or 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> for 90 d</p>	Heavy lacrimation at 470 mg/m <sup>3</sup> . <sup>a</sup>
<b>Blood pH changes</b>	
<p><a href="#">Manninen et al. (1988)</a>                      Wistar rat; female; 5/group                      0, 25 or 300 ppm (0, 18, or 212 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) 6 hrs/d for 5, 10 or 15 d</p>	<p>↓ blood pH at 5 days; pH differences “leveled off at later time points (data not shown)”.</p> <p><i>Blood pH (day 5): 7.43, 7.34*, 7.36*</i></p>
<p><a href="#">Schaerdel et al. (1983)</a>                      Crl:COBS CD(SD) rat; male; 8/group [blood pO<sub>2</sub> based on n = 5]                      15, 32, 310, or 1,157 ppm (11, 23, 219, or 818 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 0 (control), 8, 12, or 24 hrs</p>	<p>↑ blood pO<sub>2</sub> at 11 and 23 mg/m<sup>3</sup> at 8-, 12-, and 24-hr time points; no change at higher concentrations; no change in blood pH.</p> <p><i>Percent change in pO<sub>2</sub> from time 0 (at 24 hours of exposure)<sup>d</sup>: 20*, 17*, 1, -2%</i></p>

Table 1-7. Evidence pertaining to other systemic effects in animals

Study design and reference	Results
<b>Amino acid levels and neurotransmitter metabolism in the brain</b>	
<p><a href="#">Manninen and Savolainen (1989)</a> Wistar rat; female; 5/group 0, 25, or 300 ppm (0, 18, or 212 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) 6 hrs/d for 5 d</p>	<p>% change compared to control:<sup>e</sup> Brain glutamine: 42*, 40*%</p>
<p><a href="#">Manninen et al. (1988)</a> Wistar rat; female; 5/group 0, 25, or 300 ppm (0, 18, or 212 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) 6 hrs/d for 5, 10, or 15 d</p>	<p>% change compared to control at 212 mg/m<sup>3</sup>:<sup>e</sup> Blood glutamine (5, 10, 15 d): 44*, 13, 14% Brain glutamine (5, 10, 15 d): 40*, 4, 2%</p>
<b>Reproductive and developmental effects</b>	
<p><a href="#">Diekman et al. (1993)</a> Crossbred gilt (female pig); 4.5 mo old; 40/group 7 ppm (5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>), range 4–12 ppm (3–8.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) or 35 ppm (25 mg/m<sup>3</sup>), range 26–45 (18–32 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) for 6 wks<sup>f</sup></p>	<p>No change in any of the reproductive or developmental parameters measured (age at puberty, conception rates, body weight of pregnant gilts, number of corpora lutea, number of live fetuses, and weight or length of fetuses).</p>

<sup>a</sup>Incidence data not provided.

<sup>b</sup>Exposure to 470 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ammonia increased mortality in rats.

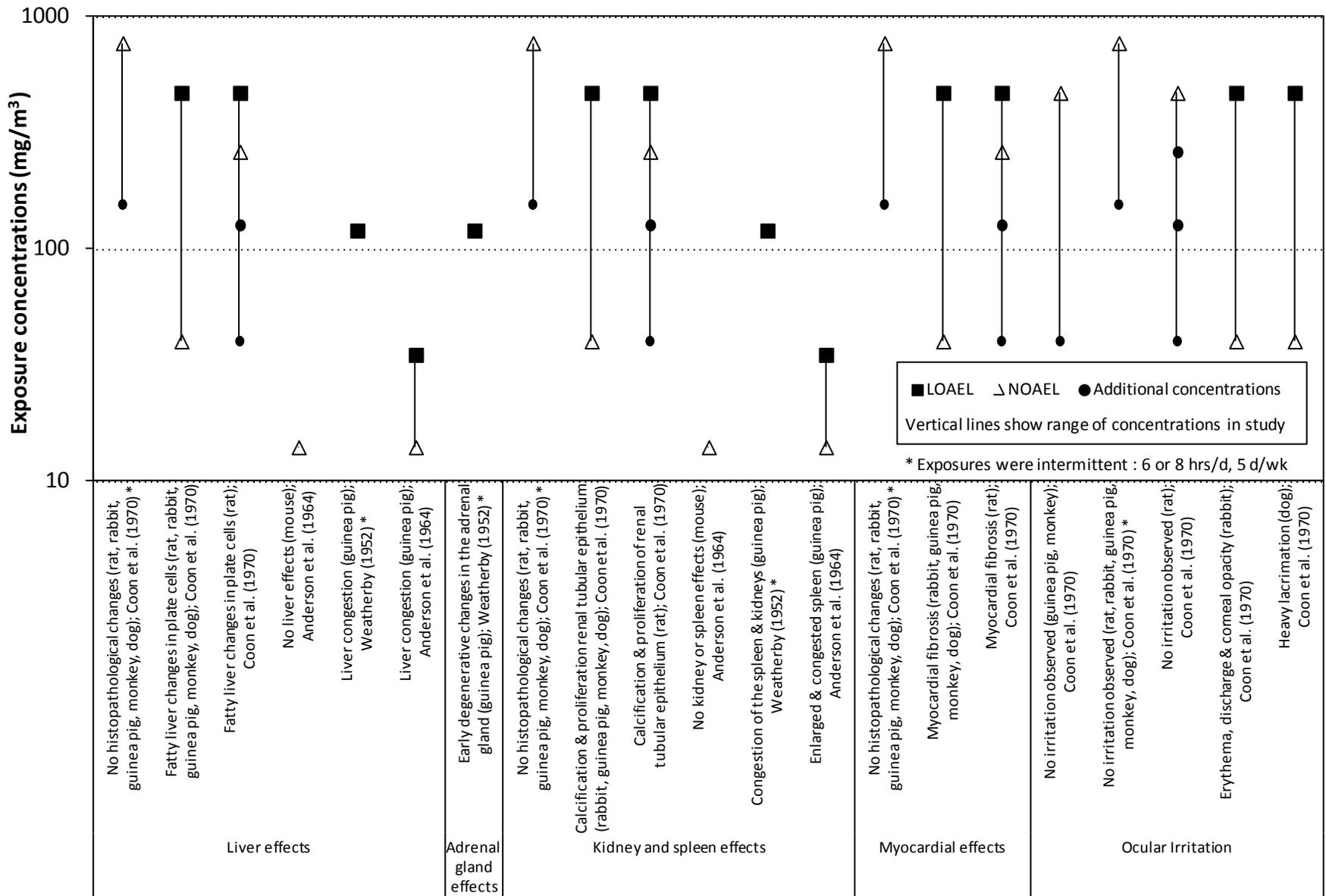
<sup>c</sup>Ammonia doses estimated using assumed average default body weight of 3.5–4.1 kg for adult rabbits ([U.S. EPA, 1988](#)).

<sup>d</sup>Measurements at time zero were used as a control; the study did not include an unexposed control group.

<sup>e</sup>Percent change compared to control calculated as: (treated value – control value)/control value x 100.

<sup>f</sup>A control group was not included. Prior to exposure to ammonia, pigs were also exposed naturally in conventional grower units to *Mycoplasma hypopneumoniae* and *Pasteurella multocida*, which cause pneumonia and atrophic rhinitis, respectively.

\*Statistically significantly different from the control ( $p < 0.05$ ).



**Figure 1-4. Exposure-response array of systemic effects following inhalation exposure to ammonia.**

*This document is a draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy.*

1 **Summary of Other Systemic Effects**

2 Effects of ammonia exposure on organs distal from the portal of entry are based largely on  
3 evidence in animals and, to a more limited extent, in humans. Effects on various organs, including  
4 liver, adrenal gland, kidney, spleen, and heart, were observed in several studies that examined  
5 responses to ammonia exposure in a number of laboratory animal species. While effects on many  
6 of these organs were observed in multiple species, including monkey, dog, rabbit, guinea pig, and  
7 rat, effects were not consistent across exposure protocols. Evidence of ocular irritation in  
8 experimental animals was inconsistently observed, and then only at high ammonia concentrations  
9 (470 mg/m<sup>3</sup>).

10 Studies of ammonia toxicity that examined other systemic effects were all published in the  
11 older toxicological literature. The only oral study of ammonium hydroxide was published in 1939  
12 ([Fazekas, 1939](#)), and three subchronic inhalation studies were published between 1952 and 1970  
13 ([Coon et al., 1970](#); [Anderson et al., 1964](#); [Weatherby, 1952](#)). In general, the information from these  
14 studies is limited by small group sizes, minimal characterization of some of the reported responses  
15 (e.g., “congestion,” “enlarged,” “fatty liver”), insufficiently detailed reporting of study results, and  
16 incomplete, if any, incidence data. In addition, [Weatherby \(1952\)](#), [Anderson et al. \(1964\)](#), and some  
17 of the experiments reported by [Coon et al. \(1970\)](#) used only one ammonia concentration in addition  
18 to the control, so no dose-response information is available from the majority of experimental  
19 studies to inform the evidence for systemic effects of ammonia.

20 Ammonia is produced endogenously in all human and animal tissues during fetal and adult  
21 life, and concentrations of free ammonia in physiological fluids are homeostatically regulated to  
22 remain at low levels ([Souba, 1987](#)). Thus, tissues are normally exposed to ammonia, and external  
23 concentrations that do not alter homeostasis would not be expected to pose a hazard for systemic  
24 effects. Experimental animal data suggest that ammonia exposures below 18 mg/m<sup>3</sup> will not  
25 increase blood ammonia levels ([Manninen et al., 1988](#); [Schaerdel et al., 1983](#)). See Appendix E,  
26 Section E.1, Metabolism, for a more detailed summary of the available literature that describes the  
27 relationship between environmental ammonia concentrations and changes in ammonia  
28 homeostasis.

29 Overall, the evidence in humans and animals indicates that ammonia exposure may be  
30 associated with effects on organs distal from the portal of entry, but does not support the liver,  
31 adrenal gland, kidney, spleen, or heart as sensitive targets of ammonia toxicity.

32  
33 **1.1.5. Carcinogenicity**

34 No information is available regarding the carcinogenic effects of ammonia in humans  
35 following oral or inhalation exposure. The carcinogenic potential of ammonia by the inhalation  
36 route has not been assessed in animals, and animal carcinogenicity data by the oral route of  
37 exposure are limited. [Toth \(1972\)](#) concluded that tumor incidence was not increased in Swiss mice  
38 exposed for their lifetime (exact exposure duration not specified) to ammonium hydroxide in  
39 drinking water at concentrations up to 0.3% (equivalent to 410 and 520 mg/kg-day in female and  
40 male mice, respectively) or in C3H mice exposed to ammonium hydroxide in drinking water at a

## ***Toxicological Review of Ammonia***

1 concentration of 0.1% (equivalent to 214 and 191 mg/kg-day in female and male mice,  
2 respectively). With the exception of mammary gland tumors in female C3H mice, concurrent  
3 control tumor incidence data were not reported and, therefore, comparison of tumor incidence in  
4 exposed and control mice could not be performed. The general lack of concurrent control data  
5 limits the ability to interpret the findings of this study.

6 The incidence of gastric cancer and the number of gastric tumors per tumor-bearing rat  
7 were statistically significantly higher in rats exposed to 0.01% ammonia solution in drinking water  
8 (equivalent to 10 mg/kg-day) for 24 weeks following pretreatment (for 24 weeks) with the  
9 initiator, N-methyl-N'-nitro-N-nitrosoguanidine (MNNG), compared with rats receiving only MNNG  
10 and tap water ([Tsuji et al., 1992b](#)). An ammonia-only exposure group was not included in this  
11 study. In another study with the same study design, [Tsuji et al. \(1995\)](#) reported similar increases  
12 in the incidence of gastric tumors in rats following exposure to MNNG and 10 mg/kg-day ammonia.  
13 Additionally, the size and penetration to deeper tissue layers of the MNNG-initiated gastric tumors  
14 were enhanced in the rats treated with ammonia ([Tsuji et al., 1995](#)). The investigators suggested  
15 that ammonia administered in drinking water may act as a cancer promoter ([Tsuji et al., 1995](#);  
16 [Tsuji et al., 1992b](#)).

17 The evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals exposed to ammonia is  
18 summarized in Table 1-8.

19

Table 1-8. Evidence pertaining to cancer in animals

Study design and reference	Results
<b><i>Carcinogenesis studies</i></b>	
<p><b><a href="#">Toth (1972)</a></b>                      Swiss mouse; 50/sex/group                      0.1, 0.2, and 0.3% ammonium hydroxide in drinking water for their lifetime [250, 440, and 520 mg/kg-d (males); 240, 370, and 410 mg/kg-d (females)]<sup>a</sup></p>	<p>Tumor incidence was not increased in ammonia-exposed mice; however, concurrent control tumor incidence data were not reported.</p>
<p><b><a href="#">Toth (1972)</a></b>                      C3H mouse; 40/sex/group                      0.1% ammonium hydroxide in drinking water for their lifetime [191 (males) and 214 mg/kg-d (females)]<sup>b</sup></p>	<p>Tumor incidence was not increased in ammonia-exposed mice; however, with the exception of mammary gland tumors in female mice, concurrent control tumor incidence data were not reported.</p> <p><i>Mammary gland adenocarcinoma: 76, 60%</i></p>
<b><i>Initiation-promotion studies</i></b>	
<p><b><a href="#">Tsujii et al. (1992b)</a></b>                      Sprague Dawley rat; male; 40/group                      0 or 0.01% ammonia in drinking water (0 or 10 mg/kg-d)<sup>c</sup> for 24 wks; both groups pretreated for 24 wks with the tumor initiator, MNNG; no ammonia-only group</p>	<p><i>Gastric tumor incidence: 31, 70*%</i></p> <p><i># of gastric tumors/tumor-bearing rat: 1.3, 2.1*</i></p>
<p><b><a href="#">Tsujii et al. (1995)</a></b>                      Sprague-Dawley rat; male; 43–44/group                      0 or 0.01% ammonia in drinking water (0 or 10 mg/kg-d)<sup>c</sup> for 24 wks; both groups pretreated for 24 wks with the tumor initiator, MNNG; no ammonia-only group</p>	<p><i>Gastric tumor incidence: 30, 66*%</i></p> <p><i>Penetrated muscle layer or deeper: 12, 22*%</i></p> <p><i>Size (mm): 4.4, 5.3*</i></p>

<sup>a</sup>Ammonium hydroxide doses estimated based on reported average daily drinking water intakes of 9.2, 8.2, and 6.5 mL/day for males and 8.3, 6.5, and 4.8 mL/day for females in the 0.1, 0.2, and 0.3% groups, respectively, and assumed average default body weights of 37.3 and 35.3 g for males and females, respectively ([U.S. EPA, 1988](#)).

<sup>b</sup>Ammonium hydroxide doses estimated based on reported average daily drinking water intakes of 7.9 and 8.4 mL/day for males and females, respectively, and assumed average default body weights of 37.3 and 35.3 g for males and females, respectively ([U.S. EPA, 1988](#)).

<sup>c</sup>Ammonia doses estimated based on reported drinking water intake of 50 mL/day and assumed average default body weight of 523 g for male Sprague-Dawley rats during chronic exposure ([U.S. EPA, 1988](#)).

\*Statistically significantly different from the control ( $p < 0.05$ ).

1  
 2 A limited number of genotoxicity studies are available for ammonia vapor, including one  
 3 study in exposed fertilizer factory workers in India that reported chromosomal aberrations and  
 4 sister chromatid exchanges in lymphocytes ([Yadav and Kaushik, 1997](#)), two studies that found no  
 5 evidence of DNA damage in rabbit gastric mucosal or epithelial cell lines ([Suzuki et al., 1998](#); [Suzuki](#)  
 6 [et al., 1997](#)), mutation assays in *Salmonella typhimurium* (not positive) and *Escherichia coli*  
 7 (positive) ([Shimizu et al., 1985](#); [Demerec et al., 1951](#)), a micronucleus assay in mice (positive)  
 8 ([Yadav and Kaushik, 1997](#)), one positive and one negative study in *Drosophila melanogaster*

1 ([Auerbach and Robson, 1947](#); [Lobasov and Smirnov, 1934](#)), and a positive chromosomal aberration  
2 test in chick fibroblast cells in vitro ([Rosenfeld, 1932](#)) (see Appendix E, Section E.4, Tables E-14 and  
3 E-15). The finding of chromosomal aberrations and sister chromatid exchanges in human  
4 lymphocytes ([Yadav and Kaushik, 1997](#)) was difficult to interpret because of the small number of  
5 samples and confounding in the worker population by smoking and alcohol consumption. In  
6 addition, the levels of ammonia in the plant were low compared to other fertilizer plant studies,  
7 raising questions about the study's exposure assessment. Positive findings in in vitro studies with  
8 nonhuman cell lines were difficult to interpret because of the presence of a high degree of toxicity  
9 ([Demerec et al., 1951](#); [Lobasov and Smirnov, 1934](#)) or inadequate reporting ([Rosenfeld, 1932](#)). It is  
10 noteworthy that four of the eight available genotoxicity studies were published between 1932 and  
11 1951. In two of the more recent studies, ammonia exposure did not induce DNA damage in rabbit  
12 gastric mucosal or epithelial cell lines in vitro ([Suzuki et al., 1998](#); [Suzuki et al., 1997](#)). Overall, the  
13 available genotoxicity literature is inadequate to characterize the genotoxic potential of ammonia.  
14

---

## 15 **1.2. SUMMARY AND EVALUATION**

### 16 **1.2.1. Weight of Evidence for Effects Other than Cancer**

17 The respiratory system is the primary and most sensitive target of inhaled ammonia toxicity  
18 in humans and experimental animals. Evidence for respiratory system toxicity in humans comes  
19 from cross-sectional occupational studies in industrial settings that reported changes in lung  
20 function and an increased prevalence of respiratory symptoms. The findings of respiratory effects  
21 in workers exposed to ammonia as a disinfectant or cleaning product (primarily studies of asthma  
22 or asthma symptoms), studies of livestock farmers (i.e., lung function studies), controlled exposures  
23 in volunteers, and case reports of injury following acute exposure provide additional evidence that  
24 the respiratory system is a target of inhaled ammonia. Short-term and subchronic animal studies  
25 show respiratory effects in several animal species across different dose regimens. Thus, the weight  
26 of evidence of observed respiratory effects observed across multiple human and animal studies  
27 identifies respiratory system effects as a hazard from ammonia exposure.

28 Evidence for an association between inhaled ammonia exposure and effects on other organ  
29 systems distal from the portal of entry, including the immune system, liver, adrenal gland, kidney,  
30 spleen, and heart, is less compelling than for the respiratory system. The two epidemiological  
31 studies that addressed immunological function are confounded by exposures to a number of other  
32 respirable agents that have been demonstrated to be immunostimulatory and provide little support  
33 for ammonia immunotoxicity. Animal studies provide consistent evidence of elevated bacterial  
34 growth following ammonia exposure. It is unclear, however, whether elevated bacterial  
35 colonization is the result of suppressed immunity or damage to the barrier provided by the mucosal  
36 epithelium of the respiratory tract. Overall, the weight of evidence does not support the immune  
37 system [as a target of ammonia toxicity](#). Findings from animal studies indicate that ammonia  
38 exposure may be associated with effects in the liver, adrenal gland, kidney, spleen, and heart;

1 however, the weight of evidence indicates that these organs are not sensitive targets of ammonia  
2 toxicity.

3 A limited experimental toxicity database indicates that oral exposure to ammonia may be  
4 associated with effects on the stomach mucosa. Increased epithelial cell migration in the antral  
5 gastric mucosa leading to a statistically significant decrease in mucosal thickness was reported in  
6 male Sprague-Dawley rats exposed to ammonia in drinking water for durations up to 8 weeks  
7 ([Tsuji et al., 1993](#); [Kawano et al., 1991](#)). Similarly, decreases in the height and labeling index of  
8 gastric mucosa glands were reported in Donryu rats exposed to ammonia in drinking water for up  
9 to 24 weeks ([Hata et al., 1994](#)). The gastric mucosal effects observed in rats were reported to  
10 resemble mucosal changes in human atrophic gastritis ([Tsuji et al., 1993](#); [Kawano et al., 1991](#));  
11 however, the investigators also reported an absence of microscopic lesions, gastritis, or ulceration  
12 in the stomach of these rats. Evidence that oral exposure to ammonia is associated with  
13 gastrointestinal effects in humans is limited to case reports of individuals suffering from  
14 gastrointestinal effects (e.g., stomach ache, nausea, diarrhea, distress, and burns along the digestive  
15 tract) from intentionally or accidentally ingesting household cleaning solutions containing  
16 ammonia or biting into capsules of ammonia smelling salts. Mechanistic studies in rodent models  
17 support the biological plausibility that ammonia exposure may be associated with gastric effects.  
18 Given the weight of evidence from human, animal, and mechanistic studies, gastric effects may be a  
19 hazard from ammonia exposure.

20 Studies of the potential reproductive or developmental toxicity of ammonia in humans are  
21 not available. Reproductive effects were not associated with inhaled ammonia in the only animal  
22 study that examined the reproductive effects of ammonia (i.e., a limited-design inhalation study in  
23 the pig). Further, ammonia is produced endogenously in human and animal tissues during fetal and  
24 adult life, and concentrations of free ammonia in physiological fluids are homeostatically regulated  
25 to remain at low levels ([Souba, 1987](#)). Thus, exposures to ammonia at levels that do not alter  
26 homeostasis (i.e., that do not alter normal blood or tissue ammonia levels) would not be expected to  
27 pose a hazard for systemic effects, including effects on the developing fetus or reproductive tissues.  
28

### 29 **1.2.2. Weight of Evidence for Carcinogenicity**

30 The available information on carcinogenicity following exposure to ammonia is limited to  
31 oral animal studies. There was inadequate reporting in studies in Swiss or C3H mice administered  
32 ammonium hydroxide in drinking water for a lifetime ([Toth, 1972](#)). There is limited evidence that  
33 ammonia administered in drinking water may act as a cancer promoter ([Tsuji et al., 1995](#); [Tsuji et  
34 al., 1992b](#)). The genotoxic potential cannot be characterized based on the available genotoxicity  
35 information. Thus, under the *Guidelines for Carcinogen Risk Assessment* ([U.S. EPA, 2005a](#)), there is  
36 “inadequate information to assess carcinogenic potential” of ammonia.  
37

### 38 **1.2.3. Susceptible Populations and Lifestages**

39 Studies of the toxicity of ammonia in children or young animals compared to other  
40 lifestages that would support an evaluation of childhood susceptibility have not been conducted.

1           Hyperammonemia is a condition of elevated levels of circulating ammonia that can occur in  
2 individuals with severe diseases of the liver or kidney, organs that biotransform and excrete  
3 ammonia, or with hereditary urea cycle disorders ([Córdoba et al., 1998](#); [Schubiger et al., 1991](#);  
4 [Gilbert, 1988](#); [Jeffers et al., 1988](#); [Souba, 1987](#)). The elevated ammonia levels that accompany  
5 human diseases such as acute liver or renal failure can predispose an individual to encephalopathy  
6 due to the ability of ammonia to cross the blood-brain barrier; these effects are especially marked  
7 in newborn infants ([Minana et al., 1995](#); [Souba, 1987](#)). Thus, individuals with disease conditions  
8 that lead to hyperammonemia may be more susceptible to the effects of ammonia from external  
9 sources, but there are no studies that specifically support this hypothesized susceptibility.

10           Because the respiratory system is a target of ammonia toxicity, individuals with respiratory  
11 disease (e.g., asthmatics) might be expected to be a susceptible population. Controlled human  
12 studies that examined both healthy volunteers and volunteers with asthma ([Petrova et al., 2008](#);  
13 [Sigurdarson et al., 2004](#)) did not demonstrate greater respiratory sensitivity in asthmatics than  
14 healthy volunteers after acute exposure to ammonia. Under longer-term exposure conditions,  
15 however, as seen among livestock farmers, one study observed associations between ammonia  
16 exposure and decreased lung function among workers with chronic respiratory symptoms, but not  
17 among the asymptomatic workers ([Preller et al., 1995](#)). Additional research focusing on the  
18 question of variability in response to ammonia exposure is needed.

19

## 2. DOSE-RESPONSE ANALYSIS

### 2.1. ORAL REFERENCE DOSE FOR EFFECTS OTHER THAN CANCER

The RfD (expressed in units of mg/kg-day) is defined as an estimate (with uncertainty spanning perhaps an order of magnitude) of a daily oral exposure to the human population (including sensitive subgroups) that is likely to be without an appreciable risk of deleterious effects during a lifetime. It can be derived from a no-observed-adverse-effect level (NOAEL), lowest-observed-adverse-effect level (LOAEL), or the 95% lower bound on the benchmark dose (BMDL), with uncertainty factors (UFs) generally applied to these points of departure (PODs) to reflect limitations of the data used.

The available human and animal data are inadequate to derive an oral RfD for ammonia. Human data involving oral exposure to ammonia are limited to case reports of gastrointestinal effects following intentional or accidental ingestion of household cleaning solutions containing ammonia or ammonia inhalant capsules. Case reports can indicate the nature of acute effects of ammonia exposure and thus inform hazard identification. Because of short exposure durations and incomplete or missing quantitative exposure information, data from case reports are inadequate for dose-response analysis and subsequent derivation of a chronic reference value.

The experimental animal database for ammonia lacks standard toxicity studies that systematically evaluate a range of tissues/organs and endpoints. Repeat-exposure animal studies of the noncancer effects of ingested ammonia are limited to three studies designed to investigate the mechanisms by which ammonia can induce effects on rat gastric mucosa ([Hata et al., 1994](#); [Tsuji et al., 1993](#); [Kawano et al., 1991](#)). While these studies provide consistent evidence of changes in the gastric mucosa associated with exposure to ammonia in drinking water (see Section 1.1.2), the investigators reported no evidence of microscopic lesions, gastritis, or ulceration in the stomachs of these rats. In addition, the gastrointestinal tract has not been identified as a target of ammonia toxicity in chronic toxicity studies of ammonium compounds, including ammonium chloride and sulfate (see Section 1.1.2).

Given the limited amount of toxicity testing that has been conducted on ingested ammonia and questions concerning the adversity of the observed gastric mucosal findings in rats, the available oral database for ammonia was considered insufficient to adequately characterize toxicity outcomes and dose-response relationships. Accordingly, **an RfD for ammonia was not derived.**

#### *Previous IRIS Assessment*

No RfD was derived in the previous IRIS assessment for ammonia.

## 2.2. INHALATION REFERENCE CONCENTRATION FOR EFFECTS OTHER THAN CANCER

The RfC (expressed in units of mg/m<sup>3</sup>) is defined as an estimate (with uncertainty spanning perhaps an order of magnitude) of a continuous inhalation exposure to the human population (including sensitive subgroups) that is likely to be without an appreciable risk of deleterious effects during a lifetime. It can be derived from a NOAEL, LOAEL, or the 95% lower bound on the benchmark concentration (BMCL), with UFs generally applied to these PODs to reflect limitations of the data used.

### 2.2.1. Identification of Studies and Effects for Dose-Response Analysis

As discussed in Section 1.2, the respiratory system is the primary and most sensitive target of inhaled ammonia in humans and experimental animals, and respiratory effects have been identified as a hazard following inhalation exposure to ammonia. The experimental toxicology literature for ammonia provides evidence that inhaled ammonia may be associated with toxicity to target organs other than the respiratory system, including the liver, adrenal gland, kidney, spleen, heart, and immune system. Effects in these other (nonrespiratory) target organs were not considered as the basis for RfC derivation because the evidence for these associations is weak relative to that for respiratory effects.

Respiratory effects, characterized as increased prevalence of respiratory symptoms or decreased lung function, have been observed in worker populations exposed to ammonia concentrations  $\geq 18.5$  mg/m<sup>3</sup> ([Rahman et al., 2007](#); [Ali et al., 2001](#); [Ballal et al., 1998](#)). Decrements in lung function parameters and increased prevalence of respiratory symptoms such as wheezing, chest tightness, and cough/phlegm, have been identified as adverse respiratory health effects by the American Thoracic Society ([ATS, 2000](#)) and are similarly noted as adverse in the EPA's *Methods for Derivation of Inhalation Reference Concentrations and Application of Inhalation Dosimetry* ([U.S. EPA, 1994](#)). Respiratory effects have also been observed in animals, but at ammonia concentrations higher than those associated with respiratory effects in humans and in studies involving exposure durations (up to 114 days) shorter than those in occupational studies.

In general human data are preferred over animal data for deriving reference values because these data are more relevant for assessing human health effects than animal studies and avoid the uncertainty associated with interspecies extrapolation when animal data serve as the basis for the RfC. In the case of ammonia, the available occupational studies provide adequate data for the quantitative analysis of health outcomes considered relevant to potential general population exposures. In addition, ammonia concentrations associated with respiratory effects in human studies were generally lower than effect levels identified in animal studies (Section 1.1.1). Therefore, data on respiratory effects in humans were used for the derivation of the RfC and respiratory effects in animals were not further considered.

Of the available human data, associations between ammonia exposure and respiratory effects have been examined in epidemiology studies of industrial worker populations (Table 1-1), workers using ammonia as a cleaning product (Table 1-2), and livestock farmers. Studies of

1 workers using ammonia as a cleaning product provide evidence of an association between  
2 ammonia exposure and increased risk of asthma; however, these studies did not measure ammonia  
3 concentrations in workplace air and thus are not useful for dose-response analysis. Studies in  
4 livestock farmers also support an association between ammonia exposure and decreased  
5 pulmonary function; however, because of co-exposures to other agents in these studies (including  
6 dust, endotoxin, mold, and disinfectant products) and the availability of studies with fewer co-  
7 exposures, studies of livestock farmers were considered to be supportive of the association  
8 between ammonia exposure and respiratory effects but were not carried forward for dose-  
9 response analysis.

10 Of the available studies of ammonia exposure in industrial settings, four cross-sectional  
11 epidemiology studies of industrial worker populations—three studies in urea fertilizer plants by  
12 [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#), [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#), and [Ali et al. \(2001\)](#), and a study in a soda ash plant by  
13 [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#)—provide information useful for examining the relationship between chronic  
14 ammonia exposure and increased prevalence of respiratory symptoms and/or decreased lung  
15 function. [Bhat and Ramaswamy \(1993\)](#) evaluated lung function in ammonia plant workers, but did  
16 not measure ammonia concentrations in workplace air. Therefore, this study was not considered  
17 useful for RfC derivation.

18 In general, the four cross-sectional occupational studies provide a coherent set of estimated  
19 NOAELs (i.e., workplace exposures up to 8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) and effect levels, and are considered candidate  
20 principal studies for RfC derivation. [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#) observed an increased prevalence of  
21 respiratory symptoms and decreased lung function in fertilizer plant workers exposed to a mean  
22 ammonia concentration of 18.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, but not in workers in a second plant exposed to a mean  
23 ammonia concentration of 4.9 mg/m<sup>3</sup>. [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#) observed an increased prevalence of  
24 respiratory symptoms among workers in one factory (Factory A) with ammonia exposures ranging  
25 from 2–27.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>,<sup>5</sup> but no increase in symptoms in another factory (Factory B) with exposures  
26 ranging from 0.02–7 mg/m<sup>3</sup>. A companion study by [Ali et al. \(2001\)](#) observed decreased lung  
27 function among workers in the factory with the higher ammonia exposures (Factory A); the factory  
28 with the lower ammonia exposures, also studied by [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#), was not included in this  
29 companion study by [Ali et al. \(2001\)](#). [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) found no differences in the prevalence  
30 of respiratory symptoms or lung function between workers (mean exposure 6.5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) and the  
31 control group, and also no differences in respiratory symptoms or lung function when workers  
32 were stratified by ammonia exposure level (lowest exposure group, <4.4 mg/m<sup>3</sup>; middle exposure  
33 group, 4.4–8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>; highest exposure group, >8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>).

34 The NOAEL of 8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup> from the [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study represents the low end of the  
35 high-exposure group (defined as those exposed to >8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) from this study. The authors state  
36 that 3 of the 12 workers in the high-exposure group were exposed to concentrations >17.7 mg/m<sup>3</sup>;  
37 therefore, the majority of workers in the high-exposure group (9 of 12) would have been exposed to

---

<sup>5</sup>This concentration range does not include exposures in the urea store (number of employees = 6; range of ammonia concentrations = 90–130.4 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) because employees in this area were required to wear full protective clothing, thus minimizing potential exposure.

1 ammonia concentrations in the range of 8.8–17.7 mg/m<sup>3</sup>. In the absence of more detailed exposure  
2 information, the low-end of the range was considered a reasonable estimate of the NOAEL from the  
3 [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study.

4 Of the four candidate principal studies, higher confidence is associated with the exposure  
5 measures from [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#). Both [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) and [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#) collected  
6 personal air samples, but confidence in the analytical method used by [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) is  
7 higher than that used by [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#). [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#) used two analytical methods  
8 for measuring ammonia concentrations in workplace air (i.e., Dräger PAC III and Dräger tube);  
9 concentrations measured by the two methods differed by four- to fivefold, indicating some  
10 uncertainty across the two measurement methods, although ammonia concentrations measured by  
11 the two methods were strongly correlated (correlation coefficient of 0.8). In contrast, the [Holness](#)  
12 [et al. \(1989\)](#) study used an established analytical method for measuring exposure to ammonia  
13 recommended by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) that involved  
14 the collection of air samples on acid-treated silica gel absorption tubes. [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#) used  
15 area monitors rather than personal air sampling methods; the latter method provides a better  
16 estimate of an individual's exposure. Both [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) and [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#) examined  
17 both respiratory symptoms and lung function, which provides stronger evidence of respiratory  
18 effects than symptom data alone. [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#) evaluated only respiratory symptoms. [Ali et](#)  
19 [al. \(2001\)](#), the companion study to [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#), examined pulmonary function; however,  
20 because [Ali et al. \(2001\)](#) evaluated only workers in the higher exposure setting, the data cannot be  
21 used to estimate a NOAEL.

22 Considerations in selecting the principal study for RfC derivation include the higher  
23 confidence placed in the measures of ammonia exposure in [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) as compared to  
24 the other candidate studies, evaluation of both respiratory symptoms and lung function parameters  
25 in the [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study, and the fact that the estimate of the NOAEL for respiratory effects  
26 of 8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup> from [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) was the highest of the NOAELs estimated from the  
27 candidate principal studies. The [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study does not demonstrate a relationship  
28 between ammonia exposure and respiratory effects probably because of the relatively low levels of  
29 ammonia in the workplace that reflect the controlled nature of the operations at the plant. The  
30 [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study is identified as the principal study for derivation of the RfC, but only  
31 with support from the collection of occupational epidemiology studies that includes studies with  
32 higher workplace ammonia concentrations.

33 In summary, the occupational study of ammonia exposure in workers in a soda ash plant by  
34 [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) was identified as the principal study for RfC derivation, with support  
35 from [Rahman et al. \(2007\)](#), [Ballal et al. \(1998\)](#), and [Ali et al. \(2001\)](#), and respiratory effects  
36 were identified as the critical effect.

### 38 2.2.2. Methods of Analysis

39 A NOAEL of 8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, identified from the [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study, was used as  
40 the point of departure (POD) for RfC derivation.

1 Because the RfC assumes continuous human exposure over a lifetime, the POD was adjusted  
2 to account for the noncontinuous exposure associated with occupational exposure (i.e., 8-hour  
3 workday and 5-day workweek). The duration-adjusted POD was calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NOAEL}_{\text{ADJ}} &= \text{NOAEL} \times \text{VEho}/\text{VEh} \times 5 \text{ days}/7 \text{ days} \\ &= 8.8 \text{ mg}/\text{m}^3 \times 10 \text{ m}^3/20 \text{ m}^3 \times 5 \text{ days}/7 \text{ days} \\ &= 3.1 \text{ mg}/\text{m}^3 \end{aligned}$$

8 Where:

9 VEho = human occupational default minute volume (10 m<sup>3</sup> breathed during the 8-hour  
10 workday, corresponding to a light to moderate activity level) ([U.S. EPA, 2011a](#))

11 VEh = human ambient default minute volume (20 m<sup>3</sup> breathed during the entire day).

### 13 2.2.3. Derivation of the Reference Concentration

14 Consistent with EPA's *A Review of the Reference Dose and Reference Concentration Processes*  
15 ([U.S. EPA, 2002; Section 4.4.5](#)), also described in the Preamble, five possible areas of uncertainty  
16 and variability were considered when deriving the RfC. A **composite UF of 10** was applied to the  
17 selected duration-adjusted POD of 3.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup> to derive the RfC of 0.3 mg/m<sup>3</sup>. An explanation of the  
18 five possible areas of uncertainty and variability follows:

- 19  
20 • An intraspecies uncertainty factor, UF<sub>H</sub>, of 10 was applied to account for potentially  
21 susceptible individuals in the absence of data evaluating variability of response to inhaled  
22 ammonia in the human population;
- 23  
24 • An interspecies uncertainty factor, UF<sub>A</sub>, of 1 was applied to account for uncertainty in  
25 extrapolating from laboratory animals to humans because the POD was based on human  
26 data from an occupational study;
- 27  
28 • A subchronic to chronic uncertainty factor, UF<sub>S</sub>, of 1 was applied because the occupational  
29 exposure period in the principal study ([Holness et al., 1989](#)), defined as the mean number of  
30 years at the present job for exposed workers, of approximately 12 years was considered to  
31 be of chronic duration;
- 32  
33 • An uncertainty factor for extrapolation from a LOAEL to a NOAEL, UF<sub>L</sub>, of 1 was applied  
34 because a NOAEL was used as the POD; and
- 35  
36 • A database uncertainty factor, UF<sub>D</sub>, of 1 was applied to account for deficiencies in the  
37 database. The ammonia inhalation database consists of epidemiological studies and  
38 experimental animal studies. The epidemiological studies include industrial worker  
39 populations, populations exposed to ammonia through the use of cleaning products, studies  
40 in livestock farmers exposed to inhaled ammonia and other airborne agents, controlled  
41 exposure studies involving volunteers exposed to ammonia vapors for short periods of time,  
42 and a large number of case reports of acute exposure to high ammonia concentrations (e.g.,  
43 accidental spills/releases) that examined irritation effects, respiratory symptoms, and  
44 effects on lung function. Studies of the toxicity of inhaled ammonia in experimental animals  
45 include subchronic studies in a number of species, including rats, guinea pigs, and pigs, that  
46 examined respiratory and other systemic effects of ammonia, several immunotoxicity

1 studies, and one limited reproductive toxicity study in young female pigs. (See Chapter 1  
2 for more details regarding available studies.) The database lacks developmental and  
3 multigeneration reproductive toxicity studies.  
4

5 As noted in EPA's *A Review of the Reference Dose and Reference Concentration Processes* ([U.S.  
6 EPA, 2002](#)), "the size of the database factor to be applied will depend on other information  
7 in the database and on how much impact the missing data may have on determining the  
8 toxicity of a chemical and, consequently, the POD." While the database lacks  
9 multigeneration reproductive and developmental toxicity studies, these studies would not  
10 be expected to impact the determination of ammonia toxicity at the POD. Therefore, a  
11 database UF to account for the lack of these studies is not considered necessary. This  
12 determination was based on the observation that ammonia is endogenously produced and  
13 homeostatically regulated in humans and animals during fetal and adult life. In vivo studies  
14 in several animal species and in vitro studies of human placenta demonstrate that ammonia  
15 is produced within the uteroplacenta and released into the fetal and maternal circulations  
16 ([Jóźwik et al., 2005](#); [Jóźwik et al., 1999](#); [Bell et al., 1989](#); [Johnson et al., 1986](#); [Hauguel et al.,  
17 1983](#); [Meschia et al., 1980](#); [Remesar et al., 1980](#); [Holzman et al., 1979](#); [Holzman et al., 1977](#);  
18 [Rubaltelli and Formentin, 1968](#); [Luschinsky, 1951](#)). Ammonia concentrations in human  
19 umbilical vein and artery blood (at term) of healthy individuals have been shown to be  
20 higher than concentrations in maternal blood (i.e., 1.0–1.4 µg/mL in umbilical arterial and  
21 venous blood compared to 0.5 µg/mL in the mothers' venous blood) ([Jóźwik et al., 2005](#)).  
22 Human fetal umbilical blood levels of ammonia at birth were not influenced by gestational  
23 age based on deliveries ranging from gestation week 25 to 43 ([DeSanto et al., 1993](#)). This  
24 evidence provides some assurance that endogenous ammonia concentrations in the fetus  
25 are similar to other lifestages, and that baseline ammonia concentrations would not be  
26 associated with developmental toxicity. Additionally, evidence in animals ([Manninen et al.,  
27 1988](#); [Schaerdel et al., 1983](#)) suggests that exposure to ammonia at concentrations up to  
28 18 mg/m<sup>3</sup> does not alter blood ammonia levels (see Appendix E, Section E.1, for a more  
29 detailed discussion of ammonia distribution and elimination). Accordingly, exposure at the  
30 duration-adjusted POD (3.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) would not be expected to alter ammonia homeostasis  
31 nor result in measureable increases in blood ammonia concentrations. Thus, exposure to  
32 ammonia at the POD for the RfC would not be expected to result in systemic toxicity,  
33 including reproductive or developmental toxicity.  
34

35 The RfC for ammonia<sup>6</sup> was calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{RfC} &= \text{NOAEL}_{\text{ADJ}} \div \text{UF} \\ &= 3.1 \text{ mg/m}^3 \div 10 \\ &= 0.31 \text{ mg/m}^3 \text{ or } \mathbf{0.3 \text{ mg/m}^3 \text{ (rounded to one significant figure)}} \end{aligned}$$

#### 36 37 38 39 40 41 **2.2.4. Uncertainties in the Derivation of the Reference Concentration**

42 As presented earlier in this section and in the Preamble, EPA standard practices and RfC  
43 guidance ([U.S. EPA, 2002, 1995, 1994](#)) were followed in applying an UF approach to a POD (from a  
44 NOAEL) to derive the RfC. Specific uncertainties were accounted for by the application of UFs (i.e.,

---

<sup>6</sup>Due to uncertainty concerning the possible influence of anions on the toxicity of ammonium, information on ammonium salts was not used to characterize the effects for ammonia and ammonium hydroxide. Therefore, the RfC derived in this assessment is applicable to ammonia and ammonium hydroxide, but not ammonium salts.

1 in the case of the ammonia RfC, a factor to address the absence of data to evaluate the variability in  
2 response to inhaled ammonia in the human population). The following discussion identifies  
3 additional uncertainties associated with the quantification of the RfC for ammonia.

4  
5 ***Use of a NOAEL as a POD***

6 Data sets that support benchmark dose modeling are generally preferred for reference  
7 value derivation because the shape of the dose-response curve can be taken into account in  
8 establishing the POD. For the ammonia RfC, no decreases in lung function or increases in the  
9 prevalence of respiratory symptoms were observed in the worker population studied by [Holness et  
10 al. \(1989\)](#), i.e., the principal study used to derive the RfC, and as such, the data from this study did  
11 not support dose-response modeling. Rather, a NOAEL from the [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study was  
12 used to estimate the POD. The availability of dose-response data from a study of ammonia,  
13 especially in humans, would increase the confidence in the estimation of the POD.

14  
15 ***Endogenous Ammonia***

16 Ammonia, which is produced endogenously, has been detected in breath exhaled from the  
17 nose and trachea of humans (range: 0.0092–0.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) ([Schmidt et al., 2013](#); [Smith et al., 2008](#);  
18 [Larson et al., 1977](#)). Higher and more variable ammonia concentrations are reported in human  
19 breath exhaled from the mouth or oral cavity, with the majority of ammonia concentrations from  
20 these sources ranging from 0.085 to 2.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup> ([Schmidt et al., 2013](#); [Smith et al., 2008](#); [Spanel et  
21 al., 2007a, b](#); [Turner et al., 2006](#); [Diskin et al., 2003](#); [Smith et al., 1999](#); [Norwood et al., 1992](#); [Larson  
22 et al., 1977](#)). Ammonia in exhaled breath from the mouth or oral cavity is largely attributed to the  
23 production of ammonia via bacterial degradation of food protein in the oral cavity or  
24 gastrointestinal tract ([Turner et al., 2006](#); [Smith et al., 1999](#); [Vollmuth and Schlesinger, 1984](#)), and  
25 can be influenced by factors such as diet, oral hygiene, and age. In contrast, ammonia  
26 concentrations measured in breath exhaled from the nose and trachea are lower (range: 0.0092–0.1  
27 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) ([Schmidt et al., 2013](#); [Smith et al., 2008](#); [Larson et al., 1977](#)) and appear to better represent  
28 levels at the alveolar interface of the lung or in the tracheo-bronchial region and are thought to be  
29 more relevant to understanding systemic levels of ammonia than ammonia in breath exhaled from  
30 the mouth ([Schmidt et al., 2013](#); [Smith et al., 2008](#)) (Appendix E, Section E.1 and Table E-1).

31 It is important to recognize that ammonia in ambient air is the source of some of the  
32 ammonia in exhaled breath. Studies of ammonia in exhaled breath (Appendix E, Table E-1) were  
33 conducted in environments with measureable levels of ambient (exogenous) ammonia rather than  
34 in ammonia-free environments, and it has been established that concentrations of certain trace  
35 compounds in exhaled breath are correlated with their ambient concentrations ([Spanel et al.,  
36 2013](#)). [Spanel et al. \(2013\)](#) found that 70% (± 13%) of inhaled ammonia is retained in exhaled  
37 breath. It is likely that ammonia concentrations in breath exhaled from the nose would be lower if  
38 the inspired air were free of ammonia. Therefore, levels of ammonia in exhaled breath reported in  
39 the literature would need to be adjusted if they are to be used as a measure of systemic ammonia.

1 Ammonia concentrations measured in breath exhaled from the nose and trachea,  
2 considered to be more representative of systemic levels of ammonia than breath exhaled from the  
3 mouth, are lower than the ammonia RfC of 0.3 mg/m<sup>3</sup> by a factor of threefold or more. The range of  
4 ammonia breath concentrations measured in samples collected from the mouth (0.085 to  
5 2.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>), i.e., concentrations that are largely influenced by such factors as ammonia production  
6 via bacterial degradation of food protein, includes the value of the ammonia RfC. Ammonia exhaled  
7 by an individual, whether through the nose or mouth, is rapidly diluted in the larger volume of  
8 ambient air and would not contribute significantly to overall ammonia exposure. Further, such  
9 endogenous exposures existed in the occupational epidemiology studies that served as the basis for  
10 the ammonia RfC.

11  
12 **2.2.5. Confidence Statement**

13 A confidence level of high, medium, or low is assigned to the study used to derive the RfC,  
14 the overall database, and the RfC itself, as described in Section 4.3.9.2 of EPA's *Methods for*  
15 *Derivation of Inhalation Reference Concentrations and Application of Inhalation Dosimetry* ([U.S. EPA,](#)  
16 [1994](#)). Confidence in the principal study ([Holness et al., 1989](#)) is medium. The design, conduct, and  
17 reporting of this occupational exposure study were adequate, but the study was limited by a small  
18 sample size and by the fact that workplace ammonia concentrations to which the study population  
19 was exposed were below those associated with ammonia-related effects (i.e., only a NOAEL was  
20 identified). However, the results from the principal study are supported by the results from other  
21 cross-sectional studies of workers in industrial settings, studies of workers using ammonia as a  
22 cleaning product, studies of livestock farmers, multiple studies of acute ammonia exposure in  
23 volunteers, and the available inhalation data from animals.

24 Confidence in the database is medium. The inhalation ammonia database includes one  
25 limited study of reproductive and developmental toxicity in pigs that did not examine a complete  
26 set of reproductive or developmental endpoints. Normally, confidence in a database lacking these  
27 types of studies is considered to be lower due to the uncertainty surrounding the use of any one or  
28 several studies to adequately address all potential endpoints following chemical exposure at  
29 various critical lifestages. Unless a comprehensive array of endpoints is addressed by the database,  
30 there is uncertainty as to whether the critical effect chosen for the RfC derivation is the most  
31 sensitive or appropriate. However, reproductive, developmental, and other systemic effects are not  
32 expected at the RfC because it is well documented that ammonia is endogenously produced in  
33 humans and animals, ammonia concentrations in blood are homeostatically regulated to remain at  
34 low levels, and ammonia concentrations in air at the POD are not expected to alter homeostasis.  
35 Thus, confidence in the database, in the absence of these types of studies, is medium.

36 Reflecting medium confidence in the principal study and medium confidence in the  
37 database, the overall confidence in the RfC is medium.

1 **2.2.6. Previous IRIS Assessment**

2 The previous IRIS assessment for ammonia (posted to the database in 1991) presented an  
 3 RfC of 0.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup> based on co-principal studies—the occupational exposure study of workers in a  
 4 soda ash plant by [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) and the subchronic study by [Broderson et al. \(1976\)](#) that  
 5 examined the effects of ammonia exposure in F344 rats inoculated on day 7 of the study with the  
 6 bacterium *M. pulmonis*. The NOAEL of 6.4 mg/m<sup>3</sup> (estimated as the mean concentration of the  
 7 entire exposed group) from the [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study (duration adjusted: NOAEL<sub>ADJ</sub> =  
 8 2.3 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) was used as the POD.<sup>7</sup>

9 The previous RfC was derived by dividing the exposure-adjusted POD of 2.3 mg/m<sup>3</sup> (from a  
 10 NOAEL of 6.4 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) by a composite UF of 30: 10 to account for the protection of sensitive  
 11 individuals and 3 for database deficiencies to account for the lack of chronic data, the proximity of  
 12 the LOAEL from the subchronic inhalation study in the rat ([Broderson et al., 1976](#)) to the NOAEL,  
 13 and the lack of reproductive and developmental toxicity studies. A UF<sub>D</sub> of 3 (rather than 10) was  
 14 applied because studies in rats ([Schaerdel et al., 1983](#)) showed no increase in blood ammonia levels  
 15 at an inhalation exposure up to 32 ppm (22.6 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) and only minimal increases at 300–  
 16 1,000 ppm (212–707 mg/m<sup>3</sup>), suggesting that no significant distribution is likely to occur at the  
 17 human equivalent concentration. In this document, a UF<sub>D</sub> of one was selected because a more  
 18 thorough investigation of the literature on ammonia homeostasis and literature published since  
 19 1991 on fetoplacental ammonia levels provides further support that exposure to ammonia at the  
 20 POD would not result in a measureable increase in blood ammonia, including fetal blood levels.  
 21

---

22 **2.3. Cancer Risk Estimates**

23 The carcinogenicity assessment provides information on the carcinogenic hazard potential  
 24 of the substance in question, and quantitative estimates of risk from oral and inhalation exposure  
 25 may be derived. Quantitative risk estimates may be derived from the application of a low-dose  
 26 extrapolation procedure. If derived, and unless otherwise stated, the oral slope factor is a plausible  
 27 upper bound on the estimate of risk per mg/kg-day of oral exposure. Similarly, an inhalation unit  
 28 risk is a plausible upper bound on the estimate of risk per µg/m<sup>3</sup> air breathed.

29 As discussed in Section 1.2, there is “inadequate information to assess carcinogenic  
 30 potential” of ammonia. Therefore, a quantitative cancer assessment was not conducted and cancer  
 31 risk estimates were not derived for ammonia.

32 The previous IRIS assessment of ammonia also did not include a carcinogenicity  
 33 assessment.  
 34

---

<sup>7</sup>In this document, the lower bound of the high exposure category from the [Holness et al. \(1989\)](#) study (8.8 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, adjusted for continuous exposure to 3.1 mg/m<sup>3</sup>) was identified as the POD because workers in this high-exposure category, as well as those in the two lower-exposure categories, showed no statistically significant increase in the prevalence of respiratory symptoms or decreases in lung function.

## REFERENCES

Multiple references published in the same year by the same author(s) have been assigned a letter (e.g., 1986a, 1986b) based on author(s), year, and title. Those same letters have been retained for the appendices.

- [Ali, BA; Ahmed, HO; Ballal, SG; Albar, AA. \(2001\). Pulmonary function of workers exposed to ammonia: a study in the Eastern Province of Saudi Arabia. \*Int J Occup Environ Health\* 7: 19-22.](#)
- [Amshel, CE; Fealk, MH; Phillips, BJ; Caruso, DM. \(2000\). Anhydrous ammonia burns case report and review of the literature \[Review\]. \*Burns\* 26: 493-497.](#)
- [Anderson, DP; Beard, CW; Hanson, RP. \(1964\). The adverse effects of ammonia on chickens including resistance to infection with Newcastle disease virus. \*Avian Dis\* 8: 369-379.](#)
- [Andreasen, M; Baekbo, P; Nielsen, JP. \(2000\). Lack of effect of aerial ammonia on atrophic rhinitis and pneumonia induced by \*Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae\* and toxigenic \*Pasteurella multocida\*. \*J Vet Med B\* 47: 161-171.](#)
- [Arif, AA; Delclos, GL. \(2012\). Association between cleaning-related chemicals and work-related asthma and asthma symptoms among healthcare professionals. \*Occup Environ Med\* 69: 35-40. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/oem.2011.064865>](#)
- [ATS \(American Thoracic Society\). \(2000\). What constitutes an adverse health effect of air pollution? This official statement of the American Thoracic Society was adopted by the ATS Board of Directors, July 1999. \*Am J Respir Crit Care Med\* 161: 665-673. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1164/ajrccm.161.2.ats4-00>](#)
- [ATSDR \(Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry\). \(2004\). Toxicological profile for ammonia \[ATSDR Tox Profile\]. Atlanta, GA: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service. <http://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/toxprofiles/tp.asp?id=11&tid=2>](#)
- [Auerbach, C; Robson, JM. \(1947\). Tests of chemical substances for mutagenic action. \*Proc Roy Soc Edinb B Biol\* 62: 284-291.](#)
- [Bacom, A; Yanosky, M. \(2010\). E-mails dated June 22, 2010, from Michael Yanosky, Dräger Safety Inc., Technical Support Detection Products to Amber Bacom, SRC, Inc., contractor to NCEA, ORD, U.S. EPA. Available online](#)
- [Ballal, SG; Ali, BA; Albar, AA; Ahmed, HO; al-Hasan, AY. \(1998\). Bronchial asthma in two chemical fertilizer producing factories in eastern Saudi Arabia. \*Int J Tuberc Lung Dis\* 2: 330-335.](#)
- [Bell, AW; Kennaugh, JM; Battaglia, FC; Meschia, G. \(1989\). Uptake of amino acids and ammonia at mid-gestation by the fetal lamb. \*Q J Exp Physiol\* 74: 635-643.](#)
- [Bhat, MR; Ramaswamy, C. \(1993\). Effect of ammonia, urea and diammonium phosphate \(DAP\) on lung functions in fertilizer plant workers. \*Indian J Physiol Pharmacol\* 37: 221-224.](#)
- [Broderson, JR; Lindsey, JR; Crawford, JE. \(1976\). The role of environmental ammonia in respiratory mycoplasmosis of rats. \*Am J Pathol\* 85: 115-130.](#)

## **Toxicological Review of Ammonia**

- 1 [CDC \(Centers for Disease Control and Prevention\). \(2004\). The health consequences of smoking: A](#)  
2 [report of the Surgeon General. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human](#)  
3 [Services. http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/library/smokingconsequences/](#)
- 4 [Choudat, D; Goehen, M; Korobaeff, M; Boulet, A; Dewitte, JD; Martin, MH. \(1994\). Respiratory](#)  
5 [symptoms and bronchial reactivity among pig and dairy farmers. Scand J Work Environ](#)  
6 [Health 20: 48-54.](#)
- 7 [Christesen, HB. \(1995\). Prediction of complications following caustic ingestion in adults. Clin](#)  
8 [Otolaryngol Allied Sci 20: 272-278.](#)
- 9 [Cole, TJ; Cotes, JE; Johnson, GR; Martin Hde, V; Reed, JW; Saunders, MJ. \(1977\). Ventilation, cardiac](#)  
10 [frequency and pattern of breathing during exercise in men exposed to O-chlorobenzylidene](#)  
11 [malononitrile \(CS\) and ammonia gas in low concentrations. Q J Exp Physiol 62: 341-351.](#)
- 12 [Coon, RA; Jones, RA; Jenkins, LJ, Jr; Siegel, J. \(1970\). Animal inhalation studies on ammonia, ethylene](#)  
13 [glycol, formaldehyde, dimethylamine, and ethanol. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 16: 646-655.](#)  
14 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0041-008x\(70\)90069-4](#)
- 15 [Córdoba, J; Gottstein, J; Blei, AT. \(1998\). Chronic hyponatremia exacerbates ammonia-induced brain](#)  
16 [edema in rats after portacaval anastomosis. J Hepatol 29: 589-594.](#)
- 17 [Cormier, Y; Israël-Assayag, E; Racine, G; Duchaine, C. \(2000\). Farming practices and the respiratory](#)  
18 [health risks of swine confinement buildings. Eur Respir J 15: 560-565.](#)
- 19 [Crook, B; Robertson, JF; Glass, SA; Botheroyd, EM; Lacey, J; Topping, MD. \(1991\). Airborne dust,](#)  
20 [ammonia, microorganisms, and antigens in pig confinement houses and the respiratory](#)  
21 [health of exposed farm workers. Am Ind Hyg Assoc J 52: 271-279.](#)  
22 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/15298669191364721](#)
- 23 [Curtis, SE; Anderson, CR; Simon, J; Jensen, AH; Day, DL; Kelley, KW. \(1975\). Effects of aerial](#)  
24 [ammonia, hydrogen sulfide and swine-house dust on rate of gain and respiratory-tract](#)  
25 [structure in swine. J Anim Sci 41: 735-739.](#)
- 26 [Dean, JA. \(1985\). Lange's handbook of chemistry. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.](#)
- 27 [Delclos, GL; Gimeno, D; Arif, AA; Benavides, FG; Zock, JP. \(2009\). Occupational exposures and](#)  
28 [asthma in health-care workers: Comparison of self-reports with a workplace-specific job](#)  
29 [exposure matrix. Am J Epidemiol 169: 581-587. http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/aje/kwn387](#)
- 30 [Demerec, M; Bertani, G; Flint, J. \(1951\). A survey of chemicals for mutagenic action on E coli. Am Nat](#)  
31 [85: 119-135.](#)
- 32 [DeSanto, JT; Nagomi, W; Liechty, EA; Lemons, JA. \(1993\). Blood ammonia concentration in cord](#)  
33 [blood during pregnancy. Early Hum Dev 33: 1-8.](#)
- 34 [Diekman, MA; Scheidt, AB; Sutton, AL; Green, ML; Clapper, JA; Kelly, DT; Van Alstine, WG. \(1993\).](#)  
35 [Growth and reproductive performance, during exposure to ammonia, of gilts afflicted with](#)  
36 [pneumonia and atrophic rhinitis. Am J Vet Res 54: 2128-2131.](#)
- 37 [Diskin, AM; Spanel, P; Smith, D. \(2003\). Time variation of ammonia, acetone, isoprene and ethanol](#)  
38 [in breath: a quantitative SIFT-MS study over 30 days. Physiol Meas 24: 107-119.](#)
- 39 [Doig, PA; Willoughby, RA. \(1971\). Response of swine to atmospheric ammonia and organic dust. J](#)  
40 [Am Vet Med Assoc 159: 1353-1361.](#)
- 41 [Done, SH; Chennells, DJ; Gresham, AC; Williamson, S; Hunt, B; Taylor, LL; Bland, V; Jones, P;](#)  
42 [Armstrong, D; White, RP; Demmers, TG; Teer, N; Wathes, CM. \(2005\). Clinical and](#)

- 1 pathological responses of weaned pigs to atmospheric ammonia and dust. Vet Rec 157: 71-  
2 80.
- 3 [Donham, KJ; Cumro, D; Reynolds, SJ; Merchant, JA. \(2000\). Dose-response relationships between](#)  
4 [occupational aerosol exposures and cross-shift declines of lung function in poultry workers:](#)  
5 [recommendations for exposure limits. J Occup Environ Med 42: 260-269.](#)
- 6 [Donham, KJ; Reynolds, SJ; Whitten, P; Merchant, JA; Burmeister, L; Pendorf, WJ. \(1995\).](#)  
7 [Respiratory dysfunction in swine production facility workers: dose-response relationships](#)  
8 [of environmental exposures and pulmonary function. Am J Ind Med 27: 405-418.](#)
- 9 [Donnay, C; Denis, MA; Magis, R; Fevotte, J; Massin, N; Dumas, O; Pin, J; Choudat, D; Kauffmann, F; Le](#)  
10 [Moual, N. \(2011\). Under-estimation of self-reported occupational exposure by](#)  
11 [questionnaire in hospital workers. Occup Environ Med 68: 611-617.](#)  
12 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/oem.2010.061671>
- 13 [Douglas, RB; Coe, JE. \(1987\). The relative sensitivity of the human eye and lung to irritant gases.](#)  
14 [Ann Occup Hyg 31: 265-267.](#)
- 15 [Dumas, O; Donnay, C; Heederik, DJ; Héry, M; Choudat, D; Kauffmann, F; Le Moual, N. \(2012\).](#)  
16 [Occupational exposure to cleaning products and asthma in hospital workers. Occup Environ](#)  
17 [Med 69: 883-889. http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/oemed-2012-100826](#)
- 18 [Dworkin, MS; Patel, A; Fennell, M; Vollmer, M; Bailey, S; Bloom, J; Mudahar, K; Lucht, R. \(2004\). An](#)  
19 [outbreak of ammonia poisoning from chicken tenders served in a school lunch. J Food Prot](#)  
20 [67: 1299-1302.](#)
- 21 [Eggeman, T. \(2001\). Ammonia. In Kirk-Othmer encyclopedia of chemical technology. New York, NY:](#)  
22 [John Wiley & Sons.](#)
- 23 [Fazekas, IG. \(1939\). Die durch ammoniak hervorgerufene experimentelle](#)  
24 [nebenierenhypertrophie. Endokrinologie 21: 315-337.](#)
- 25 [Ferguson, WS; Koch, WC; Webster, LB; Gould, JR. \(1977\). Human physiological response and](#)  
26 [adaption to ammonia. J Occup Med 19: 319-326.](#)
- 27 [Gaafar, H; Girgis, R; Hussein, M; el-Nemr, F. \(1992\). The effect of ammonia on the respiratory nasal](#)  
28 [mucosa of mice. A histological and histochemical study. Acta Otolaryngol 112: 339-342.](#)
- 29 [Gilbert, GJ. \(1988\). Acute ammonia intoxication 37 years after ureterosigmoidostomy. South Med J](#)  
30 [81: 1443-1445.](#)
- 31 [Giroux, M; Ferrières, J. \(1998\). Serum nitrates and creatinine in workers exposed to atmospheric](#)  
32 [nitrogen oxides and ammonia. Sci Total Environ 217: 265-269.](#)  
33 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0048-9697\(98\)00190-9](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0048-9697(98)00190-9)
- 34 [Gustin, P; Urbain, B; Prouvost, JF; Ansay, M. \(1994\). Effects of atmospheric ammonia on pulmonary](#)  
35 [hemodynamics and vascular permeability in pigs: interaction with endotoxins. Toxicol Appl](#)  
36 [Pharmacol 125: 17-26. http://dx.doi.org/10.1006/taap.1994.1044](#)
- 37 [Guyatt, GH; Oxman, AD; Kunz, R; Vist, GE; Falck-Ytter, Y; Schünemann, HJ. \(2008a\). GRADE: What is](#)  
38 ["quality of evidence" and why is it important to clinicians? \[Review\]. BMJ 336: 995-998.](#)  
39 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/bmj.39490.551019.BE>
- 40 [Guyatt, GH; Oxman, AD; Vist, GE; Kunz, R; Falck-Ytter, Y; Alonso-Coello, P; Schünemann, HJ. \(2008b\).](#)  
41 [GRADE: An emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of](#)  
42 [recommendations. BMJ 336: 924-926. http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/bmj.39489.470347.AD](#)

## ***Toxicological Review of Ammonia***

- 1 [Hamid, HA; El-Gazzar, RM. \(1996\). Effect of occupational exposure to ammonia on enzymatic](#)  
2 [activities of catalase and mono amine oxidase. J Egypt Public Health Assoc 71: 465-475.](#)
- 3 [Hamilton, TD; Roe, JM; Hayes, CM; Jones, P; Pearson, GR; Webster, AJ. \(1999\). Contributory and](#)  
4 [exacerbating roles of gaseous ammonia and organic dust in the etiology of atrophic rhinitis.](#)  
5 [Clin Diagn Lab Immunol 6: 199-203.](#)
- 6 [Hamilton, TD; Roe, JM; Hayes, CM; Webster, AJ. \(1998\). Effects of ammonia inhalation and acetic](#)  
7 [acid pretreatment on colonization kinetics of toxigenic Pasteurella multocida within upper](#)  
8 [respiratory tracts of swine. J Clin Microbiol 36: 1260-1265.](#)
- 9 [Hata, M; Yamazaki, Y; Ueda, T; Kato, T; Kohli, Y; Fujiki, N. \(1994\). Influence of ammonia solution on](#)  
10 [gastric mucosa and acetic acid induced ulcer in rats. Eur J Histochem 38: 41-52.](#)
- 11 [Hauguel, S; Challier, JC; Cedard, L; Olive, G. \(1983\). Metabolism of the human placenta perfused in](#)  
12 [vitro: glucose transfer and utilization, O2 consumption, lactate and ammonia production.](#)  
13 [Pediatr Res 17: 729-732. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1203/00006450-198309000-00009>](#)
- 14 [Heederik, D; van Zwieten, R; Brouwer, R. \(1990\). Across-shift lung function changes among pig](#)  
15 [farmers. Am J Ind Med 17: 57-58.](#)
- 16 [HEW \(U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare\). \(1964\). Smoking and health: Report of](#)  
17 [the advisory committee to the surgeon general of the public health service. Washington, DC:](#)  
18 [U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.](#)  
19 <http://profiles.nlm.nih.gov/ps/retrieve/ResourceMetadata/NNBBMQ>
- 20 [Hill, AB. \(1965\). The environment and disease: Association or causation? Proc R Soc Med 58: 295-](#)  
21 [300.](#)
- 22 [Holness, DL; Purdham, JT; Nethercott, JR. \(1989\). Acute and chronic respiratory effects of](#)  
23 [occupational exposure to ammonia. AIHA J 50: 646-650.](#)  
24 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/15298668991375308>
- 25 [Holzman, IR; Lemons, JA; Meschia, G; Battaglia, FC. \(1977\). Ammonia production by the pregnant](#)  
26 [uterus \(39868\). Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 156: 27-30.](#)
- 27 [Holzman, IR; Philipps, AF; Battaglia, FC. \(1979\). Glucose metabolism, lactate, and ammonia](#)  
28 [production by the human placenta in vitro. Pediatr Res 13: 117-120.](#)
- 29 [HSDB \(Hazardous Substances Data Bank\). \(2012\). Ammonia. Washington, DC: National Library of](#)  
30 [Medicine.](#)
- 31 [IARC \(International Agency for Research on Cancer\). \(2006\). Preamble to the IARC monographs.](#)  
32 [Lyon, France. <http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Preamble/>](#)
- 33 [Ihrig, A; Hoffmann, J; Triebig, G. \(2006\). Examination of the influence of personal traits and](#)  
34 [habituation on the reporting of complaints at experimental exposure to ammonia. Int Arch](#)  
35 [Occup Environ Health 79: 332-338. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s00420-005-0042-y>](#)
- 36 [IOM \(Institute of Medicine\). \(2008\). Improving the presumptive disability decision-making process](#)  
37 [for veterans. In JM Samet; CC Bodurow \(Eds.\). Washington, DC: National Academies Press.](#)  
38 [http://www.nap.edu/openbook.php?record\\_id=11908](http://www.nap.edu/openbook.php?record_id=11908)
- 39 [IPCS \(International Programme on Chemical Safety\). \(1986\). Environmental health criteria:](#)  
40 [Ammonia. \(EHC 54\). Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.](#)  
41 <http://www.inchem.org/documents/ehc/ehc/ehc54.htm>
- 42 [Jarudi, NI; Golden, B. \(1973\). Ammonia eye injuries. J Iowa Med Soc 63: 260-263.](#)

## ***Toxicological Review of Ammonia***

- 1 [Jeffers, LJ; Dubow, RA; Zieve, L; Reddy, KR; Livingstone, AS; Neimark, S; Viamonte, M; Schiff, ER.](#)  
2 [\(1988\). Hepatic encephalopathy and orotic aciduria associated with hepatocellular](#)  
3 [carcinoma in a noncirrhotic liver. Hepatology 8: 78-81.](#)
- 4 [Johnson, DR; Bedick, CR; Clark, NN; Mckain, DL.](#) (2009). Design and testing of an independently  
5 [controlled urea SCR retrofit system for the reduction of NOx emissions from marine diesels.](#)  
6 [Environ Sci Technol 43: 3959-3963. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1021/es900269p>](#)
- 7 [Johnson, RL; Gilbert, M; Block, SM; Battaglia, FC.](#) (1986). Uterine metabolism of the pregnant rabbit  
8 [under chronic steady-state conditions. Am J Obstet Gynecol 154: 1146-1151.](#)
- 9 [Jones, EA.](#) (2002). Ammonia, the GABA neurotransmitter system, and hepatic encephalopathy  
10 [\[Review\]. Metab Brain Dis 17: 275-281.](#)
- 11 [Jóźwik, M; Jóźwik, M; Pietrzycki, B; Chojnowski, M; Teng, C; Jóźwik, M; Battaglia, FC.](#) (2005).  
12 [Maternal and fetal blood ammonia concentrations in normal term human pregnancies. Biol](#)  
13 [Neonate 87: 38-43. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1159/000081702>](#)
- 14 [Jóźwik, M; Teng, C; Meschia, G; Battaglia, FC.](#) (1999). Contribution of branched-chain amino acids to  
15 [uteroplacental ammonia production in sheep. Biol Reprod 61: 792-796.](#)
- 16 [Kawano, S; Tsujii, M; Fusamoto, H; Sato, N; Kamada, T.](#) (1991). Chronic effect of intragastric  
17 [ammonia on gastric mucosal structures in rats. Dig Dis Sci 36: 33-38.](#)
- 18 [Kennedy, SM; Le Moual, N; Choudat, D; Kauffmann, F.](#) (2000). Development of an asthma specific job  
19 [exposure matrix and its application in the epidemiological study of genetics and](#)  
20 [environment in asthma \(EGEA\). Occup Environ Med 57: 635-641.](#)
- 21 [Klein, J; Olson, KR; McKinney, HE.](#) (1985). Caustic injury from household ammonia. Am J Emerg Med  
22 [3: 320.](#)
- 23 [Klendshoj, NC; Rejent, TA.](#) (1966). Tissue levels of some poisoning agents less frequently  
24 [encountered. J Forensic Sci 11: 75-80.](#)
- 25 [Larson, TV; Covert, DS; Frank, R; Charlson, RJ.](#) (1977). Ammonia in the human airways:  
26 [Neutralization of inspired acid sulfate aerosols. Science 197: 161-163.](#)
- 27 [Le Moual, N; Kauffmann, F; Eisen, EA; Kennedy, SM.](#) (2008). The healthy worker effect in asthma:  
28 [Work may cause asthma, but asthma may also influence work \[Review\]. Am J Respir Crit](#)  
29 [Care Med 177: 4-10. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1164/rccm.200703-415PP>](#)
- 30 [Lemiere, C; Bégin, D; Camus, M; Forget, A; Boulet, LP; Gérin, M.](#) (2012). Occupational risk factors  
31 [associated with work-exacerbated asthma in Quebec. Occup Environ Med 69: 901-907.](#)  
32 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/oemed-2012-100663](#)
- 33 [Lide, DR.](#) (2008). CRC handbook of chemistry and physics. In DR Lide (Ed.), (88th ed.). Boca Raton,  
34 [FL: CRC Press.](#)
- 35 [Lina, BAR; Kuijpers, MHM.](#) (2004). Toxicity and carcinogenicity of acidogenic or alkalogenic diets in  
36 [rats; effects of feeding NH\(4\)Cl, KHCO\(3\) or KCl. Food Chem Toxicol 42: 135-153.](#)
- 37 [Lobasov, M; Smirnov, F.](#) (1934). Nature of the action of chemical agents on mutational process in  
38 [Drosophila melanogaster: II. The effect of ammonia on the occurrence of lethal](#)  
39 [transgenations. C R Biol 3: 174-176.](#)
- 40 [Lopez, GP; Dean, BS; Krenzelo, EP.](#) (1988). Oral-exposure to ammonia inhalants: A report of 8  
41 [cases \[Abstract\]. Vet Hum Toxicol 30: 350.](#)

## Toxicological Review of Ammonia

- 1 [Luschinsky, HL. \(1951\). The activity of glutaminase in the human placenta. Arch Biochem Biophys](#)  
2 [31: 132-140.](#)
- 3 [MacEwen, JD; Theodore, J; Vernot, EH. \(1970\). Human exposure to EEL concentrations of](#)  
4 [monomethylhydrazine. In Proceedings of the first annual conference on environmental](#)  
5 [toxicology. Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, OH: Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory.](#)
- 6 [Manninen, A; Anttila, S; Savolainen, H. \(1988\). Rat metabolic adaptation to ammonia inhalation.](#)  
7 [Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 187: 278-281.](#)
- 8 [Manninen, ATA; Savolainen, H. \(1989\). Effect of short-term ammonia inhalation on selected amino](#)  
9 [acids in rat brain. Pharmacol Toxicol 64: 244-246.](#)
- 10 [Medina-Ramón, M; Zock, JP; Kogevinas, M; Sunyer, J; Basagaña, X; Schwartz, J; Burge, PS; Moore, V;](#)  
11 [Antó, JM. \(2006\). Short-term respiratory effects of cleaning exposures in female domestic](#)  
12 [cleaners. Eur Respir J 27: 1196-1203. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1183/09031936.06.00085405>](#)
- 13 [Medina-Ramón, M; Zock, JP; Kogevinas, M; Sunyer, J; Torralba, Y; Borrell, A; Burgos, F; Antó, JM.](#)  
14 [\(2005\). Asthma, chronic bronchitis, and exposure to irritant agents in occupational](#)  
15 [domestic cleaning: A nested case-control study. Occup Environ Med 62: 598-606.](#)  
16 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/oem.2004.017640](#)
- 17 [Mégraud, F; Neman-Simha, V; Brüggmann, D. \(1992\). Further evidence of the toxic effect of ammonia](#)  
18 [produced by Helicobacter pylori urease on human epithelial cells. Infect Immun 60: 1858-](#)  
19 [1863.](#)
- 20 [Melbostad, E; Eduard, W. \(2001\). Organic dust-related respiratory and eye irritation in Norwegian](#)  
21 [farmers. Am J Ind Med 39: 209-217.](#)
- 22 [Meschia, G; Battaglia, FC; Hay, WW; Sparks, JW. \(1980\). Utilization of substrates by the ovine](#)  
23 [placenta in vivo. Fed Proc 39: 245-249.](#)
- 24 [Millea, TP; Kucan, JO; Smoot, EC. \(1989\). Anhydrous ammonia injuries. Journal of Burn Care and](#)  
25 [Rehabilitation 10: 448-453.](#)
- 26 [Minana, MD; Marcaida, G; Grisolia, S; Felipe, V. \(1995\). Prenatal exposure of rats to ammonia](#)  
27 [impairs NMDA receptor function and affords delayed protection against ammonia toxicity](#)  
28 [and glutamate neurotoxicity. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 54: 644-650.](#)
- 29 [Monsó, E; Riu, E; Radon, K; Magarolas, R; Danuser, B; Iversen, M; Morera, J; Nowak, D. \(2004\).](#)  
30 [Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in never-smoking animal farmers working inside](#)  
31 [confinement buildings. Am J Ind Med 46: 357-362. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/ajim.20077>](#)
- 32 [Mori, S; Kaneko, H; Mitsuma, T; Hayakawa, T; Yamaguchi, C; Uruma, M. \(1998\). Implications of](#)  
33 [gastric topical bioactive peptides in ammonia-induced acute gastric mucosal lesions in rats.](#)  
34 [Scand J Gastroenterol 33: 386-393.](#)
- 35 [Murakami, M; Yoo, JK; Teramura, S; Yamamoto, K; Saita, H; Matuo, K; Asada, T; Kita, T. \(1990\).](#)  
36 [Generation of ammonia and mucosal lesion formation following hydrolysis of urea by](#)  
37 [urease in the rat stomach. J Clin Gastroenterol 12: S104-S109.](#)
- 38 [Nagy, L; Kusstatscher, S; Hauschka, PV; Szabo, S. \(1996\). Role of cysteine proteases and protease](#)  
39 [inhibitors in gastric mucosal damage induced by ethanol or ammonia in the rat. J Clin Invest](#)  
40 [98: 1047-1054. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1172/JCI118865>](#)
- 41 [Nelson, DL; Cox, MM. \(2008\). Amino acid oxidation and the production of urea. In DL Nelson; AL](#)  
42 [Lehninger; MM Cox \(Eds.\), Lehninger principles of biochemistry \(5th ed., pp. 680, 683\). New](#)  
43 [York, NY: W.H. Freeman & Co.](#)

## Toxicological Review of Ammonia

- 1 [Neumann, R; Mehlhorn, G; Leonhardt, W; Kastner, P; Willig, R; Schimmel, D; Johannsen, U. \(1987\).](#)  
2 [\[Experimental studies on the effect on unweaned pigs of aerogenous toxic gas stress, using](#)  
3 [ammonia of differing concentrations. 1. Clinical picture of ammonia-exposed piglets under](#)  
4 [the influence of Pasteurella multocida infection, with and without exposure to thermo-](#)  
5 [motor stress\]. J Vet Med B 34: 183-196. \[http://dx.doi.org/10.1111/j.1439-\]\(http://dx.doi.org/10.1111/j.1439-0450.1987.tb00386.x\)](#)  
6 [0450.1987.tb00386.x](#)
- 7 [Norwood, DM; Wainman, T; Lioy, PJ; Waldman, JM. \(1992\). Breath ammonia depletion and its](#)  
8 [relevance to acidic aerosol exposure studies. Arch Environ Occup Health 47: 309-313.](#)  
9 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/00039896.1992.9938367](#)
- 10 [NRC \(National Research Council\). \(1983\). Risk assessment in the federal government: Managing the](#)  
11 [process. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.](#)  
12 [http://www.nap.edu/openbook.php?record\\_id=366&page=R1](#)
- 13 [NRC \(National Research Council\). \(2009\). Science and decisions: Advancing risk assessment.](#)  
14 [Washington, DC: National Academies Press. <http://www.nap.edu/catalog/12209.html>](#)
- 15 [O'Neil, MJ; Heckelman, PE; Koch, CB; Roman, KJ. \(2006\). Ammonia. In The Merck index: An](#)  
16 [encyclopedia of chemicals, drugs, and biologicals \(14th ed.\). Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck](#)  
17 [& Co., Inc.](#)
- 18 [Ota, Y; Hasumura, M; Okamura, M; Takahashi, A; Ueda, M; Onodera, H; Imai, T; Mitsumori, K; Hirose,](#)  
19 [M. \(2006\). Chronic toxicity and carcinogenicity of dietary administered ammonium sulfate](#)  
20 [in F344 rats. Food Chem Toxicol 44: 17-27. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2005.06.001>](#)
- 21 [Petrova, M; Diamond, J; Schuster, B; Dalton, P. \(2008\). Evaluation of trigeminal sensitivity to](#)  
22 [ammonia in asthmatics and healthy human volunteers. Inhal Toxicol 20: 1085-1092.](#)  
23 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/08958370802120396](#)
- 24 [Preller, L; Heederik, D; Boleij, JSM; Vogelzang, PFJ; Tielen, MJM. \(1995\). Lung function and chronic](#)  
25 [respiratory symptoms of pig farmers: Focus on exposure to endotoxins and ammonia and](#)  
26 [use of disinfectants. Occup Environ Med 52: 654-660.](#)
- 27 [Rahman, MH; Bråtveit, M; Moen, BE. \(2007\). Exposure to ammonia and acute respiratory effects in a](#)  
28 [urea fertilizer factory. Int J Occup Environ Health 13: 153-159.](#)
- 29 [Remesar, X; Arola, L; Palou, A; Alemany, M. \(1980\). Activities of enzymes involved in amino-acid](#)  
30 [metabolism in developing rat placenta. Eur J Biochem 110: 289-293.](#)  
31 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1111/j.1432-1033.1980.tb04867.x](#)
- 32 [Reynolds, SJ; Donham, KJ; Whitten, P; Merchant, JA; Burmeister, LF; Pependorf, WJ. \(1996\).](#)  
33 [Longitudinal evaluation of dose-response relationships for environmental exposures and](#)  
34 [pulmonary function in swine production workers. Am J Ind Med 29: 33-40.](#)  
35 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/\(SICI\)1097-0274\(199601\)29:1<&gt;33::AID-AJIM5<>3.0.CO;2-#](#)
- 36 [Richard, D; Bouley, G; Boudene, C. \(1978a\). \[Effects of ammonia gas continuously inhaled by rats](#)  
37 [and mice\]. Bull Europ Physiol Resp 14: 573-582.](#)
- 38 [Rosenbaum, AM; Walner, DL; Dunham, ME; Holinger, LD. \(1998\). Ammonia capsule ingestion](#)  
39 [causing upper aerodigestive tract injury. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 119: 678-680.](#)
- 40 [Rosenfeld, M. \(1932\). \[Experimental modification of mitosis by ammonia\]. Archiv fur](#)  
41 [experimentelle Zellforschung, besonders Gewebeziichtung 14: 1-13.](#)
- 42 [Rosswall, T. \(1981\). The biogeochemical nitrogen cycle. In GE Likens \(Ed.\), Some perspectives of the](#)  
43 [major biogeochemical cycles \(pp. 25-49\). Chichester, England: John Wiley & Sons.](#)

## Toxicological Review of Ammonia

- 1 [Rothman, KJ; Greenland, S. \(1998\). Modern epidemiology \(2nd ed.\). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott,](#)  
2 [Williams, & Wilkins.](#)
- 3 [Rubaltelli, FF; Formentin, PA. \(1968\). Ammonia nitrogen, urea and uric acid blood levels in the](#)  
4 [mother and in both umbilical vessels at delivery. Biol Neonat 13: 147-154.](#)  
5 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1159/000240142>
- 6 [Sadasivudu, B; Radha Krishna Murthy, C. \(1978\). Effects of ammonia on monoamine oxidase and](#)  
7 [enzymes of GABA metabolism in mouse brain. Arch Physiol Biochem 86: 67-82.](#)
- 8 [Sadasivudu, B; Rao, TI; Murthy, CR. \(1979\). Chronic metabolic effects of ammonia in mouse brain.](#)  
9 [Arch Physiol Biochem 87: 871-885.](#)
- 10 [Schaerdel, AD; White, WJ; Lang, CM; Dvorchik, BH; Bohner, K. \(1983\). Localized and systemic effects](#)  
11 [of environmental ammonia in rats. J Am Assoc Lab Anim Sci 33: 40-45.](#)
- 12 [Schmidt, FM; Vaittinen, O; Metsälä, M; Lehto, M; Forsblom, C; Groop, PH; Halonen, L. \(2013\).](#)  
13 [Ammonia in breath and emitted from skin. J Breath Res 7: 017109.](#)  
14 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1752-7155/7/1/017109>
- 15 [Schoeb, TR; Davidson, MK; Lindsey, JR. \(1982\). Intracage ammonia promotes growth of](#)  
16 [Mycoplasma pulmonis in the respiratory tract of rats. Infect Immun 38: 212-217.](#)
- 17 [Schubiger, G; Bachmann, C; Barben, P; Colombo, JP; Tönz, O; Schüpbach, D. \(1991\). N-](#)  
18 [acetylglutamate synthetase deficiency: diagnosis, management and follow-up of a rare](#)  
19 [disorder of ammonia detoxication. Eur J Pediatr 150: 353-356.](#)
- 20 [Shimizu, H; Suzuki, Y; Takemura, N; Goto, S; Matsushita, H. \(1985\). The results of microbial](#)  
21 [mutation test for forty-three industrial chemicals. Sangyo Igaku 27: 400-419.](#)
- 22 [Sigurdarson, ST; O'Shaughnessy, PT; Watt, JA; Kline, IN. \(2004\). Experimental human exposure to](#)  
23 [inhaled grain dust and ammonia: towards a model of concentrated animal feeding](#)  
24 [operations. Am J Ind Med 46: 345-348. http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/ajim.20055](#)
- 25 [Silverman, L; Whittenberger, JL; Muller, J. \(1949\). Physiological response of man to ammonia in low](#)  
26 [concentrations. J Ind Hyg Toxicol 31: 74-78.](#)
- 27 [Smeets, MA; Bulsing, PJ; van Rooden, S; Steinmann, R; de Ru, JA; Ogink, NW; van Thriel, C; Dalton,](#)  
28 [PH. \(2007\). Odor and irritation thresholds for ammonia: a comparison between static and](#)  
29 [dynamic olfactometry. Chem Senses 32: 11-20. http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/chemse/bjl031](#)
- 30 [Smith, D; Spanel, P; Davies, S. \(1999\). Trace gases in breath of healthy volunteers when fasting and](#)  
31 [after a protein-calorie meal: a preliminary study. J Appl Physiol 87: 1584-1588.](#)
- 32 [Smith, D; Wang, T; Pysanenko, A; Spanel, P. \(2008\). A selected ion flow tube mass spectrometry](#)  
33 [study of ammonia in mouth- and nose-exhaled breath and in the oral cavity. Rapid Commun](#)  
34 [Mass Spectrom 22: 783-789. http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/rcm.3434](#)
- 35 [Socolow, RH. \(1999\). Nitrogen management and the future of food: lessons from the management of](#)  
36 [energy and carbon. PNAS 96: 6001-6008.](#)
- 37 [Souba, WW. \(1987\). Interorgan ammonia metabolism in health and disease: a surgeon's view](#)  
38 [\[Review\]. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 11: 569-579.](#)
- 39 [Spanel, P; Dryahina, K; Smith, D. \(2007a\). Acetone, ammonia and hydrogen cyanide in exhaled](#)  
40 [breath of several volunteers aged 4-83 years. J Breath Res 1: 011001.](#)  
41 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1752-7155/1/1/011001>

- 1 [Spanel, P; Dryahina, K; Smith, D. \(2007b\). The concentration distributions of some metabolites in](#)  
2 [the exhaled breath of young adults. J Breath Res 1: 026001.](#)  
3 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1752-7155/1/2/026001>
- 4 [Spanel, P; Dryahina, K; Smith, D. \(2013\). A quantitative study of the influence of inhaled compounds](#)  
5 [on their concentrations in exhaled breath. J Breath Res 7: 017106.](#)  
6 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/1752-7155/7/1/017106>
- 7 [Stombaugh, DP; Teague, HS; Roller, WL. \(1969\). Effects of atmospheric ammonia on the pig. J Anim](#)  
8 [Sci 28: 844-847.](#)
- 9 [Sundblad, BM; Larsson, BM; Acevedo, F; Ernstgård, L; Johanson, G; Larsson, K; Palmberg, L. \(2004\).](#)  
10 [Acute respiratory effects of exposure to ammonia on healthy persons. Scand J Work Environ](#)  
11 [Health 30: 313-321.](#)
- 12 [Suzuki, H; Mori, M; Suzuki, M; Sakurai, K; Miura, S; Ishii, H. \(1997\). Extensive DNA damage induced](#)  
13 [by monochloramine in gastric cells. Cancer Lett 115: 243-248.](#)
- 14 [Suzuki, H; Seto, K; Mori, M; Suzuki, M; Miura, S; Ishii, H. \(1998\). Monochloramine induced DNA](#)  
15 [fragmentation in gastric cell line MKN45. Am J Physiol 275: G712-G716.](#)
- 16 [Takeuchi, K; Ohuchi, T; Harada, H; Okabe, S. \(1995\). Irritant and protective action of urea-urease](#)  
17 [ammonia in rat gastric mucosa. Different effects of ammonia and ammonium ion. Dig Dis Sci](#)  
18 [40: 274-281.](#)
- 19 [Targowski, SP; Klucinski, W; Babiker, S; Nonnecke, BJ. \(1984\). Effect of ammonia on in vivo and in](#)  
20 [vitro immune responses. Infect Immun 43: 289-293.](#)
- 21 [Toth, B. \(1972\). Hydrazine, methylhydrazine and methylhydrazine sulfate carcinogenesis in Swiss](#)  
22 [mice. Failure of ammonium hydroxide to interfere in the development of tumors. Int J](#)  
23 [Cancer 9: 109-118.](#)
- 24 [Tsuji, M; Kawano, S; Tsuji, S; Fusamoto, H; Kamada, T; Sato, N. \(1992a\). Mechanism of gastric](#)  
25 [mucosal damage induced by ammonia. Gastroenterology 102: 1881-1888.](#)
- 26 [Tsuji, M; Kawano, S; Tsuji, S; Nagano, K; Ito, T; Hayashi, N; Fusamoto, H; Kamada, T; Tamura, K.](#)  
27 [\(1992b\). Ammonia: a possible promotor in Helicobacter pylori-related gastric](#)  
28 [carcinogenesis. Cancer Lett 65: 15-18.](#)
- 29 [Tsuji, M; Kawano, S; Tsuji, S; Ito, T; Nagano, K; Sasaki, Y; Hayashi, N; Fusamoto, H; Kamada, T.](#)  
30 [\(1993\). Cell kinetics of mucosal atrophy in rat stomach induced by long-term](#)  
31 [administration of ammonia. Gastroenterology 104: 796-801.](#)
- 32 [Tsuji, M; Kawano, S; Tsuji, S; Takei, Y; Tamura, K; Fusamoto, H; Kamada, T. \(1995\). Mechanism for](#)  
33 [ammonia-induced promotion of gastric carcinogenesis in rats. Carcinogenesis 16: 563-566.](#)
- 34 [Turner, C; Spanel, P; Smith, D. \(2006\). A longitudinal study of ammonia, acetone and propanol in the](#)  
35 [exhaled breath of 30 subjects using selected ion flow tube mass spectrometry, SIFT-MS.](#)  
36 [Physiol Meas 27: 321-337. http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/0967-3334/27/4/001](#)
- 37 [U.S. Congress. \(2011\). Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2012. \(Pub. L. No. 112-74; 125 STAT. 786\).](#)  
38 [112th U.S. Congress. http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/PLAW-112publ74/pdf/PLAW-](#)  
39 [112publ74.pdf](#)
- 40 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(1986a\). Guidelines for mutagenicity risk](#)  
41 [assessment \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/630/R-98/003\). Washington, DC.](#)  
42 <http://www.epa.gov/iris/backgrd.html>

## ***Toxicological Review of Ammonia***

- 1 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(1986b\). Guidelines for the health risk](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=22567)  
2 [assessment of chemical mixtures \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/630/R-98/002\). Washington, DC.](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=22567)  
3 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=22567>
- 4 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(1988\). Recommendations for and documentation](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=34855)  
5 [of biological values for use in risk assessment \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/600/6-87/008\).](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=34855)  
6 [Cincinnati, OH. http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=34855](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=34855)
- 7 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(1991\). Guidelines for developmental toxicity risk](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/guidelines-dev-toxicity-risk-assessment.htm)  
8 [assessment \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/600/FR-91/001\). Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/guidelines-dev-toxicity-risk-assessment.htm)  
9 [Protection Agency, Risk Assessment Forum.](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/guidelines-dev-toxicity-risk-assessment.htm)  
10 <http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/guidelines-dev-toxicity-risk-assessment.htm>
- 11 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(1994\). Methods for derivation of inhalation](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=71993)  
12 [reference concentrations and application of inhalation dosimetry \[EPA Report\].](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=71993)  
13 [\(EPA/600/8-90/066F\). Research Triangle Park, NC.](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=71993)  
14 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=71993>
- 15 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(1995\). The use of the benchmark dose approach](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/useof-bda-healthrisk.htm)  
16 [in health risk assessment \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/630/R-94/007\). Washington, DC.](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/useof-bda-healthrisk.htm)  
17 <http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/useof-bda-healthrisk.htm>
- 18 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(1996\). Guidelines for reproductive toxicity risk](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/REPRO51.PDF)  
19 [assessment \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/630/R-96/009\). Washington, DC.](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/REPRO51.PDF)  
20 <http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/REPRO51.PDF>
- 21 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(1998a\). 1998 update of ambient water quality](http://nepis.epa.gov/Exe/ZyPURL.cgi?Dockey=P1005JLO.txt)  
22 [criteria for ammonia \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA822R98008\).](http://nepis.epa.gov/Exe/ZyPURL.cgi?Dockey=P1005JLO.txt)  
23 <http://nepis.epa.gov/Exe/ZyPURL.cgi?Dockey=P1005JLO.txt>
- 24 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(1998b\). Guidelines for neurotoxicity risk](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/NEUROTOX.PDF)  
25 [assessment \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/630/R-95/001F\). Washington, DC.](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/NEUROTOX.PDF)  
26 <http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/NEUROTOX.PDF>
- 27 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2000\). Supplementary guidance for conducting](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=20533)  
28 [health risk assessment of chemical mixtures \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/630/R-00/002\).](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=20533)  
29 [Washington, DC. http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=20533](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=20533)
- 30 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2002\). A review of the reference dose and](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=51717)  
31 [reference concentration processes \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/630/P-02/002F\). Washington, DC:](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=51717)  
32 [Risk Assessment Forum, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=51717)  
33 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=51717>
- 34 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2005a\). Guidelines for carcinogen risk](http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/)  
35 [assessment \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/630/P-03/001F\). Washington, DC: Risk Assessment Forum.](http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/)  
36 <http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/>
- 37 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2005b\). Supplemental guidance for assessing](http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/guidelines-carcinogen-supplement.htm)  
38 [susceptibility from early-life exposure to carcinogens \[EPA Report\] \(pp. 1125-1133\).](http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/guidelines-carcinogen-supplement.htm)  
39 [\(EPA/630/R-03/003F\). Washington, DC.](http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/guidelines-carcinogen-supplement.htm)  
40 <http://www.epa.gov/cancerguidelines/guidelines-carcinogen-supplement.htm>
- 41 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2006a\). Approaches for the application of](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=157668)  
42 [physiologically based pharmacokinetic \(PBPK\) models and supporting data in risk](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=157668)  
43 [assessment \(Final Report\) \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/600/R-05/043F\). Washington, DC.](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=157668)  
44 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=157668>

## ***Toxicological Review of Ammonia***

- 1 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2006b\). A framework for assessing health risk of](#)  
2 [environmental exposures to children \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/600/R-05/093F\). Washington,](#)  
3 [DC. http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=158363](http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=158363)
- 4 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2007\). Integrated Risk Information System](#)  
5 [\(IRIS\): Announcement of 2008 program. Fed Reg 72: 72715-72719.](#)
- 6 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2009a\). EPAs Integrated Risk Information](#)  
7 [System: Assessment development process \[EPA Report\]. Washington, DC.](#)  
8 <http://epa.gov/iris/process.htm>
- 9 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2009b\). Integrated Risk Information System](#)  
10 [\(IRIS\): Announcement of Availability of Literature Searches for IRIS Assessments](#)  
11 [\[FRL89741; Docket ID No. EPAHQORD20070664\]. Fed Reg 74: 56611-56612.](#)
- 12 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2010\). Integrated science assessment for carbon](#)  
13 [monoxide \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/600/R-09/019F\). Research Triangle Park, NC.](#)  
14 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=218686>
- 15 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2011a\). Exposure factors handbook 2011 edition](#)  
16 [\(final\) \[EPA Report\]. \(EPA/600/R-09/052F\).](#)  
17 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=236252>
- 18 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2011b\). Recommended use of body weight 3/4](#)  
19 [as the default method in derivation of the oral reference dose \[EPA Report\].](#)  
20 [\(EPA/100/R11/0001\). Washington, DC.](#)  
21 <http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/interspecies-extrapolation.htm>
- 22 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2012a\). Advances in inhalation gas dosimetry for](#)  
23 [derivation of a reference concentration \(rfc\) and use in risk assessment \[EPA Report\].](#)  
24 [\(EPA/600/R-12/044\). Washington, DC.](#)  
25 <http://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/cfm/recordisplay.cfm?deid=244650>
- 26 [U.S. EPA \(U.S. Environmental Protection Agency\). \(2012b\). Benchmark dose technical guidance.](#)  
27 [\(EPA/100/R-12/001\). Washington, DC: Risk Assessment Forum.](#)  
28 [http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/benchmark\\_dose\\_guidance.pdf](http://www.epa.gov/raf/publications/pdfs/benchmark_dose_guidance.pdf)
- 29 [Verberk, MM. \(1977\). Effects of ammonia in volunteers. Int Arch Occup Environ Health 39: 73-81.](#)  
30 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/BF00380887>
- 31 [Vizcaya, D; Mirabelli, MC; Antó, JM; Orriols, R; Burgos, F; Arjona, L; Zock, JP. \(2011\). A workforce-](#)  
32 [based study of occupational exposures and asthma symptoms in cleaning workers. Occup](#)  
33 [Environ Med 68: 914-919. http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/oem.2010.063271](#)
- 34 [Vollmuth, TA; Schlesinger, RB. \(1984\). Measurement of respiratory tract ammonia in the rabbit and](#)  
35 [implications to sulfuric acid inhalation studies. Toxicol Sci 4: 455-464.](#)
- 36 [Wason, S; Stephan, M; Breide, C. \(1990\). Ingestion of aromatic ammonia 'smelling salts' capsules](#)  
37 [\[Letter\]. Am J Dis Child 144: 139-140.](#)  
38 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1001/archpedi.1990.02150260017009>
- 39 [Weatherby, JH. \(1952\). Chronic toxicity of ammonia fumes by inhalation. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 81:](#)  
40 [300-301.](#)
- 41 [Yadav, JS; Kaushik, VK. \(1997\). Genotoxic effect of ammonia exposure on workers in a fertilizer](#)  
42 [factory. Indian J Exp Biol 35: 487-492.](#)

## ***Toxicological Review of Ammonia***

- 1 [Zeida, JE; Barber, E; Dosman, JA; Olenchock, SA; McDuffie, HH; Rhodes, C; Hurst, T. \(1994\).](#)  
2 [Respiratory health status in swine producers relates to endotoxin exposure in the presence](#)  
3 [of low dust levels. J Occup Med 36: 49-56.](#)
- 4 [Zock, JP; Plana, E; Jarvis, D; Antó, JM; Kromhout, H; Kennedy, SM; Künzli, N; Villani, S; Olivieri, M;](#)  
5 [Torén, K; Radon, K; Sunyer, J; Dahlman-Hoglund, A; Norbäck, D; Kogevinas, M. \(2007\). The](#)  
6 [use of household cleaning sprays and adult asthma: An international longitudinal study. Am](#)  
7 [J Respir Crit Care Med 176: 735-741. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1164/rccm.200612-1793OC>](#)

8  
9